

TEACH YOURSELF
NEW TESTAMENT
GREEK

By

D. F. HUDSON
M.A. (Oxon.)

ASSOCIATION PRESS
NEW YORK

TEACH YOURSELF NEW TESTAMENT GREEK

First printed 1960

Copyright © 1960 by
The English Universities Press Ltd.

First U.S.A. edition, 1960, by
Association Press, 291 Broadway, New York 7, N. Y.

Library of Congress catalog card number: 60-13143

Printed in the United States of America

PREFACE

Some years ago an Englishman who was teaching New Testament Greek to Indian students and a Norwegian who was teaching it to Chinese students compared notes about method, and summed up the conversation in two words—"Bully them!" This book may be said to have arisen from that conversation, since there is clearly something wrong when keen young men who have a vocation for the Christian ministry have to be bullied into an essential part of the preparation of it. Two things are obvious about the standard grammars of New Testament Greek—first that they are dull, and secondly that the English is usually "biblical". Even in Britain it is now realized that the language of the Authorized or Revised Versions is not understood by the modern pagan, and to Indian students it is almost a new language which they have to learn as a step to Greek. Further, it creates a subconscious impression that the language of the New Testament was archaic, which is the exact opposite of the truth. The present writer made a few experiments with exercises in modern English, but these were not very successful, and it was the discovery of the companion book in this series, *Teach Yourself Greek*, which brought a great hope that something similar might be done for New Testament Greek. The Classical book was useless after the first few lessons because of its completely different vocabulary, and because Hellenistic Greek has many peculiarities of its own, but a very sincere debt of gratitude must be recorded to the earlier book, which has provided the basic method of the present one, and also quite a number of illustrations. A number of colleagues in Indian theological colleges have been

encouraging in their comments on the book, and particular thanks are due to my colleague in Serampore College, Mr. Mathew P. John, M.A., M.Th., who has himself used the course in an early form and made many helpful suggestions, and to Dr. Thomas Sither, formerly Principal of the Tamilnad Theological College, Tirumaraiyur, whose long experience made his comments very valuable, whilst in Britain encouragement and helpful comments have been made by my former teacher, Dr. A. M. Hunter, and by Mr. H. Carey Oakley, M.A., who has carefully and constructively scrutinized the proofs. But perhaps the most important contribution to the book has been by the "guinea-pigs" in three successive classes of students who bore with the incompleteness of earlier drafts and were always very ready to point out misprints in the typescript! The fact that they learned enough to pass the examination encouraged the hope that the course was workable.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
PREFACE	v
NOTE ON METHOD	viii
INTRODUCTION	x
LESSON	
I THE ALPHABET	1
II BREATHINGS, IOTA SUBSCRIPT, READING	7
III READING PRACTICE	10
IV DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES	12
V THE DEFINITE ARTICLE	19
VI NOUNS IN -ο—SECOND DECLENSION	21
VII NOUNS IN -α AND -η—FIRST DECLENSION	23
VIII THE VERB—PRESENT TENSE	29
IX THE VERB—FUTURE TENSE	32
X THIRD DECLENSION	38
XI THE VERB—PAST TENSES	47
XII INFINITIVES AND PARTICIPLES	54
XIII THE VERB—PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT TENSES.	61
XIV THE VERB—MIDDLE VOICE	65
XV THE VERB—PASSIVE VOICE	69
XVI THE VERB—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	74
XVII CONTRACTED VERBS	79
XVIII THE -μι VERBS	84
XIX THE IMPERATIVE MOOD	92
XX ADJECTIVES	97
XXI COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES, ADVERBS	101
XXII PREPOSITIONS	105
XXIII NUMERALS	112
XXIV PRONOUNS	115
XXV USE OF THE INFINITIVE	121
XXVI USE OF PARTICIPLES	125
XXVII CONDITIONAL SENTENCES	129
XXVIII OPTATIVE.	133
LIST OF VERBS	140
KEY TO EXERCISES	145
GREEK—ENGLISH VOCABULARY.	165
ENGLISH—GREEK VOCABULARY.	172

NOTE ON METHOD

For the last thirty or forty years there has been a lot of argument about the method of teaching languages and much has been said in favour of the "Direct Method". It is argued (and rightly) that the natural way to learn a language is the way by which a child learns its mother-tongue—by picking up the names of things, and by imitation. What is often forgotten is that no child is really fluent in its mother-tongue, which it hears spoken around it all the time, until it is in its teens. If, therefore, you can spend ten or a dozen years in an environment in which the language is spoken all the time, you can depend solely on the Direct Method! With Hellenistic Greek the question of environment is somewhat difficult until Mr. H. G. Wells' Time-machine becomes a reality, and in any case no one wants to spend ten or a dozen years learning it. Nor is it necessary, for the adult has powers of reasoning and co-ordination which can cut down the time of enabling him to grasp the general rules and principles which govern the grammar and syntax of a language. It is important, however, to bear in mind that the power of reasoning *organizes* the work, but does not cut it out altogether, and it involves a certain amount of learning by rote the basic patterns of the language. This course has been worked out to cover a period of roughly twenty-eight weeks, spending about eight hours a week, by which time it should be possible to get a working knowledge of the Greek of the New Testament. The attempt has been made to make the course interesting, and even in places amusing, but there is no painless method of learning any language in half a dozen easy lessons, and it is most important that the declensions

and conjugations, in particular, should be learned, and learned thoroughly, as they come. The schoolmaster whose favourite punishment was an order to write out ten verbs was considered a harsh taskmaster, but an oft-delinquent pupil is now grateful for an ineradicable knowledge of conjugations! The Key to the Exercises is also at the back of the book and there is no difficulty in taking a little peep, "just to make sure", but the wise student will *write out* the exercise first and only then look at the correct version. It will be slower, but far, far surer in the result.

If you really get stuck, call on your nearest clergyman or minister—he has probably forgotten most of his Greek, but you will be doing him a favour if he has to stir up his memory again!

For the sake of economy no excerpts from the New Testament have been included in the book, but from Lesson XVI you will be able to start reading the simpler portions, and for this you will need a Greek Testament. The most convenient and up-to-date edition is that recently published by the British and Foreign Bible Society, which is adequate for even quite advanced study. A small dictionary will also be useful from this stage, and either *Souter's Dictionary*, published by the O.U.P., or Bagster's small dictionary, will be adequate. For further study Abbott-Smith's *Manual Lexicon of the Greek New Testament* is more comprehensive, whilst much more detailed discussion of grammar and syntax can be found in Jay's *New Testament Greek Grammar*, published by the S.P.C.K. Anything more advanced than these will lead you into the field of specialist studies.

INTRODUCTION

A lady is reported to have said to a missionary who had been engaged in translation of the New Testament into one of the Central African languages, "But why do that? If English was good enough for St. Paul, why isn't it good enough for them?" Anyone who has begun to read this book will at least not fall into that trap, but there are still many people who believe, consciously or unconsciously, that since the Bible is a sacred book the language of the Bible is in some sense "sacred language". The fact that the Greek of the Bible is different from the Greek of Homer, Euripides, Herodotus, Thucydides and Demosthenes is obvious as soon as we begin to read it, and until a couple of generations ago there were two explanations given for this, one being that the Greek of the New Testament was a special type of language devised by the Holy Spirit for imparting Divine Truth, and the other being that it was written by non-Greeks whose own language had corrupted their Greek. Round about the turn of the century people digging in the dry sands of the Nile valley discovered masses of documents written on papyrus, a kind of material made from the dried pith of reeds, which was the most common writing-material of the ancient world. Since it is a vegetable product it is very susceptible to damp, and it is only in the bone-dry sands of Egypt that it has a chance of preservation, but it was spread over the whole of the Mediterranean at the time of the New Testament. Startling facts about these papyrus documents were that they were written in exactly the same type of Greek as the New Testament, but they were not "inspired writings", they were letters, accounts, certificates, bills and all kinds of

everyday documents, nor were they written by Jews whose Hebrew or Aramaic had "corrupted" the pure Greek of the Classical writers. The man who first made these widely known was a German scholar named Deissmann, who wrote a book called *Light from the Ancient East*, but many others have since then joined in the same work, and the results of their labours are most easily available in Moulton and Milligan's *Vocabulary of the Greek New Testament*. As a result of all these labours it was realized that the Greek of the New Testament was the common, everyday language of the first century and it is often referred to by the name "Koine", which is just the Greek word for "common".

The Gospel tells us that when Jesus was crucified an inscription was put on the Cross in Hebrew, Latin and Greek, and to people living in a country of one language like England that needs explanation (and I have seen some very strange ones produced), but I have lived for nearly twenty years in a place where all the railway stations have trilingual inscriptions on the platforms. They are in Bengali (the language of the province), Hindi (the language of the country), and English (the language most widely known by educated people). It was an everyday matter to put notices in Palestine in three languages, the language of the province (Hebrew, or more correctly, Aramaic), the official language of the Roman Empire (Latin), and the common lingua franca of the Mediterranean world (Greek), but this Greek was not the polished literary Greek of Athens which was used by authors who had a reputation for style, but the language which had been carried over the Eastern Mediterranean and as far as India, three centuries earlier, by the armies of Alexander the Great. He was not an Athenian but a Macedonian and his armies were cosmopolitan, so that the Greek they spoke was simplified and modified to be a suitable vehicle for ordinary people of many races. A serious

author considered that it was beneath his dignity to write "Common Greek", and for many centuries after that any author who wanted his work to be acceptable to educated people wrote, not in the style in which he normally spoke, but in the style in which people spoke in Athens in the fourth century B.C. That is why there are no other literary compositions in the same language as the New Testament, and that is why until the papyri were discovered, it was thought that this type of Greek was a peculiar "sacred tongue". It was really just the opposite: the men who wrote the New Testament were not concerned with literary pretensions, but with getting across to as many people as possible, in the language they could best understand, the message which they believed was the truth for all nations.

The language of the New Testament is "Common Greek", not a sacred language, as was previously thought; but the other old idea—that the Greek has been "corrupted" by Jewish writers who were not writing their mother-tongue—has something of truth in it. The English of Texas is not the same as the English of Yorkshire or Melbourne, and all of them differ from "standard English", but it would be well to stand at a safe distance before telling a Texan, or a Yorkshireman, or an Australian that his language is "corrupt"! Similarly, the Greek of the people in different regions of the Mediterranean world differed, especially when it was their second language and not their mother-tongue. A Frenchman speaking English, or an Englishman speaking French, tends to express himself in the way in which he would do in his mother-tongue, and if he is not completely conversant with the other language he tends to appear "quaint". Since the mother-tongue of almost all the New Testament writers (perhaps excluding Luke) was some form of Semitic language, this has affected their use of Greek. Also, just as an Englishman writing

about a religious subject will find that his language is affected by the language of the Authorized Version, so these people also were affected by the language of their Bible, which was the Greek version of the Old Testament which we call the Septuagint. This version was translated in Alexandria for the Greek-speaking world, and since it was translated by Jews, whose mother-tongue was Hebrew, this too has been very much affected by a Hebrew style.

Another point to remember when reading the New Testament, is that all English versions are the work of a particular group, or a particular person, therefore the English style tends to be the same from Matthew to Revelation. A little acquaintance is enough to recognize whether a man is reading from the A.V., the R.V., Moffatt, or J. B. Phillips, no matter from which part of the New Testament he is reading. But the Greek of the New Testament is not so constant in style, indeed it is very varied. By the standard of literary Greek the "best" style is that of the Epistle to the Hebrews, and the next that of St. Luke, in the Third Gospel and Acts, whilst the "worst" style is that of the Book of Revelation, which is full of grammatical solecisms and is clearly written by a man who was used to speaking Hebrew, not Greek. It is clear on the grounds of style alone that the same person could not have written the Fourth Gospel and the Book of Revelation, but there must have been two different Johns.

Another point which is interesting is that the First Letter of Peter is written in quite good Greek. It is clear from the letter itself that the writer was Sylvanus (Silas), who acted as Peter's amanuensis, but it is also likely that Peter himself was able to dictate the Greek and check it. He was a Galilean, and Galilee was a bilingual area. In England it is very difficult to realize what it means to live in a bilingual or multi-lingual area, but there are some areas of the

world where it is not uncommon for ordinary people to be fluent in three or four languages. Therefore it is very likely that the disciples, and Jesus himself, who were inhabitants of Galilee, would be equally at home when speaking in Greek as in Aramaic, and probably knew enough of Latin to get along with official business. There are many things in the New Testament which are more easily understood if it is realized that the events it describes and the words spoken, come from an area in which people were accustomed to speak more than one language, and in which the most common language for communication between people of different races was the language which is found in the New Testament. To misquote the lady mentioned at the beginning of this Introduction, "If Greek was good enough for Jesus and his disciples, it is good enough for us to take the trouble to learn it."

LESSON I

THE ALPHABET

The Letters

The heading of this chapter itself gives you a start, because the word "alphabet" comes from the name of the first two letters of the Greek alphabet—alpha and beta. Through geography you have probably also learned a third—delta—and through geometry a fourth—pi—whilst the common phrase "from alpha to omega" gives you the last. So already there are five of the twenty-four letters known to you by name, and you will probably recognize others.

Greek was originally written in capitals, and the earliest manuscripts of the New Testament are all in capitals, but later a quicker "cursive", or running, script was devised and for the most part this superseded the former "uncial", or capital, script. In many Greek texts printed today capital letters are only used for proper names, though some also print them at the beginning of a sentence or paragraph, but this is not necessary and you can safely leave them out at present, and pick them up as you go along. Out of the twenty-four, ten (*ABEZIKMNOT*) are exactly the same as in English, ten are completely different, and four look the same but are really different, so you should pay particular attention to these four, which are *HPYX*. Note them in the list below, and see what they stand for in Greek, so that you will not be misled.

The letters you will use are the small letters, and it is rather important to start with the correct way of writing them. If you can persuade someone to show you it is

Letter	English	Greek small	Capital
Mu	m	μ	Μ
Nu	n	ν	Ν
Xi	x	ξ	Ξ
Omikron	o (short)	ο	Ο
Pi	p	π	Π
Rho	rh	ρ	Ρ
Sigma	s	σ or ς	Σ
Tau	t	τ	Τ
Upsilon	u	υ	Υ
Phi	ph	φ	Φ
Chi	ch	χ	Χ
Psi	ps	ψ	Ψ
Omega	o (long)	ω	Ω or Ω

Notes on Letters

Greek has two extra vowels compared with English, since there are two pairs (ϵ - η and $ο$ - ω) of which the former is the short form and the latter the long form of the same sound. The letter ι is never dotted in Greek, and sometimes it is written underneath another letter, as mentioned in the next lesson.

Two consonants should be noted particularly:

1. Sigma has two forms— ς , which is found *only* at the end of a word, and σ , which is found at *any other position* than last letter. E.g. the word for "resurrection" in Greek is *anastasis*, which is written $\acute{\alpha}\nu\alpha\sigma\tau\alpha\sigma\iota\varsigma$.
2. Gamma takes the place of a nasal sound (n) before the guttural letters $\gamma\kappa\xi\chi$, so that the combinations are pronounced as follows: $\gamma\gamma$ —ng, $\gamma\kappa$ —nk, $\gamma\xi$ —nx, $\gamma\chi$ —nch. If two words are combined, and one originally ends with a ν and the other starts with a guttural,

the first is modified according to this rule, e.g.
συν + *γενης* = *συγγενης*.

Pronunciation

Apart from this one peculiarity Greek pronunciation is straightforward, since letters are always pronounced the same, and all letters are pronounced. There has been much argument about the way the ancient Greeks themselves pronounced the language, but in general there are two accepted ways of pronouncing Classical and New Testament Greek (neither of which is the way in which Modern Greek is pronounced!). Since your main concern is not to speak the language, but to read the New Testament, it does not really matter which way you use, but here is the Revised Pronunciation decided on by the Classical Association some years ago, which is the one most commonly used.

<i>α</i> —(i) long as in <i>father</i>	<i>ν</i> —as in <i>not</i>
(ii) short as in <i>cat</i>	<i>ξ</i> —as in <i>wax</i>
<i>β</i> —as in <i>bad</i>	<i>ο</i> —as in <i>got</i>
<i>γ</i> —as in <i>go</i> (never soft as in gentle)	<i>π</i> —as in <i>poor</i>
<i>δ</i> —as in <i>did</i>	<i>ρ</i> —as in <i>rich</i>
<i>ε</i> —as in <i>get</i>	<i>σς</i> —as in <i>mouse</i>
<i>ζ</i> —as “dz” in <i>adze</i>	<i>τ</i> —as in <i>tea</i>
<i>η</i> —a pure vowel not found in standard English; like a Yorkshireman’s “eh” or French <i>père</i>	<i>υ</i> —a thin vowel like French <i>u</i> (i) long as in <i>rue</i> (ii) short as in <i>du</i>
<i>θ</i> —soft as in <i>thin</i>	<i>φ</i> —as English <i>f</i> in <i>fish</i>
<i>ι</i> —(i) long as in <i>feet</i> (ii) short as in <i>fit</i>	<i>χ</i> —as Scots <i>ch</i> in <i>loch</i> (never as <i>ch</i> in <i>church</i>)
<i>κ</i> —as in <i>king</i>	<i>ψ</i> —as in <i>lapse</i>
<i>λ</i> —as in <i>long</i>	<i>ω</i> —a pure long vowel not found in standard Eng- lish; like a Yorkshire- man’s “oh”
<i>μ</i> —as in <i>man</i>	

Diphthongs

αι—as in Isaiah	αυ—as in gown
ει—as in grey	ευ, ηυ—as in few
οι—as in boil	ου—as in moon
υι—as in French <i>lui</i> , almost like English <i>wee</i>	

Now look at some of the things around you and try to write down and pronounce their names: You are probably sitting on a *καθεδρα* by the side of a *τραπεζα* and you are reading a *βιβλιον* which you are holding in your *χειρ*. You are writing with a *καλαμος* which you probably hold in your *δεξια χειρ*, though some people use the *αριστερα χειρ*. You are studying Greek, so you are a *μαθητης*, and using this book you can be your own *διδασκαλος*. If someone asks what you are doing with the *καλαμος* you can say, “*γραφω*”. I hope the lesson has not been so indigestible that you are suffering from *δυσπεψια*.

KEY

(cover this up until you have done the exercise)

You should have been able to guess the meaning of the Greek words in the above paragraph, but here you can check them with the pronunciation.

καθεδρα—*kathedra*—chair, seat—a cathedral is a Bishop's seat.

τραπεζα—*trapedza*—table—but probably not trapezium-shaped!

βιβλιον—*bīblion*—book—hence Bible and bibliography.

χειρ—*cheir*—hand—hence a *chiropr*odist, who treats hands and feet.

καλαμος—*kalamos*—pen—originally a reed, for writing on wax.

δεξια χειρ—dexia cheir—right hand—the connected word in Latin gives us *ambidextrous*.

αριστερα χειρ—aristera cheir—left hand.

μαθητης—mathētēs—a learner, student—nowadays the word is monopolized by the *mathematicians*, but originally included all studies.

διδασκαλος—didaskalos—teacher—hence didactic.

γραφω—graphō—I am writing—hence graph and all the words which end in -graphy.

δυσπεψια—dyspepsia, since the Greek *v* has come into its English derivatives as “y”, almost without exception.

This set of words contains all the letters of the Greek alphabet, so write them out several times until you can do it fluently.

LESSON II

BREATHINGS, IOTA SUBSCRIPT, READING

Check the list of words you have learned to read, and add another—*ἱματιον*, pronounced “himation”, meaning a garment. Perhaps you wondered why *ἀριστερα* was written with a comma over the first letter, and now you see that *ἱματιον* also has a comma, but it is turned the other way round. The first comma makes no difference to the pronunciation of *ἀριστερα*, but the second one adds an aspirate to *ἱματιον*. In Greek there is no letter “h”, but there are words beginning with an aspirate, which is indicated in this way. These two commas are called “breathings”, and the first one (´) is a *smooth* breathing, which does not affect the pronunciation of the letter, whilst the second (,) is a *rough* breathing, which gives it an aspirate.

There are five simple rules about breathings:

1. Every word in Greek which begins with a vowel has a breathing.
2. If the word is aspirated it has a ROUGH breathing (,), if it is unaspirated it has a SMOOTH breathing (´); IT MUST HAVE ONE OR OTHER, IF IT BEGINS WITH A VOWEL.
3. If it begins with a diphthong (two vowels pronounced together), the breathing is put on the second vowel.
4. Capitals have the breathing just in front of the top of the letters, e.g. Ἄδαμ, Ἰησους, Ἑβραιοι, Ἰσαακ, Ἱερουσαλημ.
5. The letter ρ beginning a word is usually given a breathing, and that is why words in English derived from Greek are spelt “rh”, like rhythm, rhombus, rhubarb, and rhinoceros.

Now look at these sentences:

ὁ διδασκαλὸς ἐστὶν ἐπὶ τῆ καθεδρᾷ—The teacher is on the chair.

τὸ βιβλίον ἐστὶν ἐπὶ τῆ τραπέζῃ—The book is on the table.

τὸ ἱμάτιον ἐστὶν ἐπὶ τῷ διδασκάλῳ—The garment is on the teacher.

The long vowels *α*, *η*, *ω* when combined with *ι* take “iota subscript” (written under). These are mostly, but not always, at the end of words.

Punctuation

The following signs of punctuation are used in printed Greek, though it must be remembered the early manuscripts of the New Testament did not have any punctuation at all.

, comma · semi-colon . full-stop ; question-mark

Notice particularly the semi-colon and question-mark which are different from English usage.

Accents

Printed Greek also has accents on words, ‘ ’ ¨, but these were invented by a grammarian in the third century B.C. to help people read the poetry of Homer. They do not appear in manuscripts before the seventh century A.D., so if people managed to read the New Testament without them for five or six hundred years, we can probably do the same. In a few cases they distinguish words which have different meanings, but the differences can usually be inferred from the context. In some cases they are completely arbitrary, and the present writer confesses that after thirty years he is still shaky on accents!

Here is the Lord's Prayer in Greek. First cover up the key and then try to read it through. Read it again before each lesson and you will soon have it by heart.

Πατερ ἡμῶν ὁ ἐν τοῖς οὐρανοῖς, ἁγιασθητω το ὄνομα σου. ἐλθετω ἡ βασιλεια σου. γενηθητω το θελημα σου, ὡς ἐν οὐρανῳ και ἐπι γης. τον ἄρτον ἡμῶν τον ἐπιουσιονδος ἡμῖν σημερον. και ἀφες ἡμῖν τα ὀφειληματα ἡμῶν ὡς και ἡμεῖς ἀφηκαμεν τοῖς ὀφειλεταις ἡμῶν, και μη εἰσενεγκης ἡμας εἰς πειρασμον, ἀλλα ῥυσαι ἡμας ἀπο του πονηρου. ὅτι σου ἐστιν ἡ βασιλεια και ἡ δυναμις και ἡ δοξα εἰς τους αἰωνας. ἀμην.

KEY

Pater hēmōn ho en tois ooranois, hagiasthētō to onoma soo. elthetō hē basileia soo. genēthētō to thelēma soo, hōs en ooranō kai epī gēs. ton arton hēmōn ton epioosion dos hēmin sēmeron. kai aphes hēmin ta opheilēmata hēmōn hōs kai hēmeis aphēkamen tois opheiletais hēmōn. kai mē eisenenkēs hēmas ejs peirasmon, alla rhoosai hēmas apo too ponēroo. hoti soo estin hē basileia kai hē dunamis kai hē doxa eis toos aiōnas. amen.

LESSON III

READING PRACTICE

Check the words you learned in Lessons I and II.

*διδασκαλος, μαθητης, τραπεζα, καθεδρα, βιβλιον, χειρ,
ιματιον.*

Now, how many Greek words do you know? Nine or ten? You have learnt nine or ten in these two lessons, but what about all the words that you knew before? Here are fifty of them, some which you will find in the New Testament, some from other Greek, but all of which have come into English, and other languages, almost unchanged. Write them in English and you will see the meanings.

Nos. 1-24 are mostly classical, nos. 25-50 are all New Testament.

- | | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. <i>δρχηστρα</i> | 18. <i>σννοφισ</i> | 35. <i>στιγμα</i> |
| 2. <i>ιδεα</i> | 19. <i>θεσις</i> | 36. <i>χαρακτηρ</i> |
| 3. <i>κινημα</i> | 20. <i>διλημμα</i> | 37. <i>σκηνη</i> |
| 4. <i>δραμα</i> | 21. <i>δευτερονομος</i> | 38. <i>παθος</i> |
| 5. <i>κλιμαξ</i> | 22. <i>παραλυσις</i> | 39. <i>μιασμα</i> |
| 6. <i>κωμα</i> | 23. <i>τηλεφωνη</i> | 40. <i>αντιθεσις</i> |
| 7. <i>ηχω</i> | 24. <i>βακτηρια</i> | 41. <i>βαθος</i> |
| 8. <i>νεμεσις</i> | 25. <i>διαγνωσις</i> | 42. <i>αυτοματον</i> |
| 9. <i>εμφασις</i> | 26. <i>αναλυσις</i> | 43. <i>δογμα</i> |
| 10. <i>υποθεσις</i> | 27. <i>γενεσις</i> | 44. <i>ηθος</i> |
| 11. <i>πνευμονια</i> | 28. <i>ψυχη</i> | 45. <i>κοσμος</i> |
| 12. <i>ασθμα</i> | 29. <i>δυσεντερια</i> | 46. <i>κανων</i> |
| 13. <i>φθισις</i> | 30. <i>ζωνη</i> | 47. <i>θερμος</i> |
| 14. <i>χαος</i> | 31. <i>ασβεστος</i> | 48. <i>βασις</i> |
| 15. <i>διπλωμα</i> | 32. <i>κρισις</i> | 49. <i>χορος</i> |
| 16. <i>ατλας</i> | 33. <i>καταστροφη</i> | 50. <i>εξοδος</i> |
| 17. <i>κρατηρ</i> | 34. <i>αναθεμα</i> | |

Notes on the Greek words

Generally in transliteration "y" replaces "υ", and "c" replaces "κ". 1 Originally the place where the chorus dance in the theatre; 3 from a root which means "move"; 4 root δρσ- "do"; 5 orig. "ladder"; 6 root φσ- "speak"; 10 lit. place under; 11 root πνε- "blow" or "breathe" (cf. pneumatic tyres); 13 root φθι- "deteriorate"; 15 orig. something doubled-up; 16 the name of the giant who held up the sky, from root meaning "untiring"; 17 lit. "mixing-bowl", and therefore the bowl-shaped top of a volcano; 18 lit. "seeing-together", root δπ- "seeing", hence "optical" etc.; 19 lit. "placing"; 20 lit. "double-taking"; 21 lit. "second law"; 22 lit. "loosening" of control of limbs; 23, 24 are modern Greek words, 23 is from the roots τηλε- "far" and φωνε- "speak", 24 is lit. "little rods" from the shape of microbes; 25 root γνω- "know"; 26 lit. "loosening-up"; 27 root γευ- "become"; 29 lit. "bad-inside"; 30 lit. "belt"; 31 roots σ- "not" and σβε- "extinguish"; 32 lit. "judging"; 33 root στρεφ- "turn"; 37 orig. tent for actors' dressing-room, which was decorated for a backcloth; 40 lit. "placing against"; 42 root αυτο- "self"; 43. lit. "that which is decided"; 46 lit. "rule", also used of a carpenter's measure; 50 roots εξ "out" and οδος "way".

Now turn to Matthew v. 1-16 in your Greek New Testament. Don't bother to try to make out the meaning, but just read the words, and you will find that soon several of them will be obvious. Then, if you want more practice, turn to some other passage which you know well, and read it through in Greek, noticing how some of the meanings become clear as you read.

Try to spot English words, and look them up in the English Dictionary, to see whether they come from Greek or not.

LESSON IV

DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

1. ἀγαθη κορη βλεπει κακον ανθρωπον.
A good girl sees a bad man.
2. ω ἀγαθη κορη, τηρει.
O good girl, watch out.
3. ο κακος ανθρωπος αρπαζει την αγαθην κορην.
The bad man seizes the good girl.
4. “ ω κακε ανθρωπε ” λεγει η κορη τω κακω ανθρωπω,
“ απελθε ”.
“ O bad man ”, says the good girl to the bad man,
“ go away ”.
5. ο κακος ανθρωπος κλεπτει την της αγαθης κορης πηραν.
The bad man steals the good girl's bag.
6. και λεγει τη αγαθη κορη κακον λογον.
And says to the good girl a bad word.
7. η αγαθη κορη τυπτει το του κακου ανθρωπου προσωπον.
The good girl smacks the bad man's face.

Let us look at the persons involved in this episode and see what happens to them. When we look at the good girl we see that in English she is the same all through, except that she gets “ ’s ” in sentence 5, but in Greek she changes quite a lot. These changes are quite familiar to Indian students whose languages treat words in the same way. The alteration in the endings of words to show their different function in the sentence is called INFLECTION, and Greek, like most Indian languages (but unlike English), is inflected.

Let us look, then, at the function of the girl in each sentence.

In sentence 1 she is the DOER of the action;

In sentence 2 she is the PERSON ADDRESSED;
 In sentence 3 she is the OBJECT of the action;
 In sentence 5 she is the POSSESSOR of the bag;
 In sentence 6 she is the INDIRECT OBJECT. The direct object is the word, and she is the person to whom it is said, and who is therefore indirectly affected by the action.

Let us now look at the function of the man, and see how he also changes.

In sentence 1 he is the OBJECT of her action;
 In sentence 3 he is the DOER of the action;
 In sentence 4 he is the PERSON ADDRESSED;
 In sentence 4 also he is the PERSON INDIRECTLY AFFECTED;
 In sentence 7 he is the POSSESSOR of the face.

There are three points to notice:

1. both the girl and the man change their endings, but
2. they do not have the same set of endings, and
3. "good" and "bad" also change *their* endings, and also the endings of the girl's adjectives are different from the endings of the man's.

The name for the part of the word which does not change (*ἀγαθ-, κορ-, κακ-, ἀνθρώπι-*) is the STEM, and the name for the part which changes is the ENDING, whilst the different forms of the words are called different CASES. In Greek there are FIVE CASES:

NOMINATIVE case, expressing the DOER (Lat.—nomen—name).

VOCATIVE case, expressing PERSON ADDRESSED (Lat.—voco—call).

ACCUSATIVE case, expressing the OBJECT.

GENITIVE case, expressing POSSESSOR or ORIGIN (cf. Genesis).

DATIVE case, expressing INDIRECT OBJECT (Lat.—do—give).

In the examples above there is ONE girl and ONE man, and all the cases are in the SINGULAR NUMBER, but there are other endings to express the PLURAL NUMBER. (In Classical Greek there is also a dual number, but you are spared that.)

The different sets of endings are accounted for because the man is MASCULINE GENDER and the girl is FEMININE GENDER.

Now it is clear that since the *form* of the word decides its particular function, it does not matter what is its position in the sentence, since it would have the same meaning in any of the following orders:

*ἀγαθη κορη βλεπει κακον ανθρωπον
κακον ανθρωπον βλεπει ἀγαθη κορη
βλεπει κακον ανθρωπον ἀγαθη κορη
ἀγαθη κορη κακον ανθρωπον βλεπει*

However, it is usually true that the order in the New Testament is Subject—Verb—Object, and if the order is varied it is done to lay emphasis on a particular word, by putting it in a prominent position, either as first word, or as last word, in the sentence.

It is also most important to notice that adjectives must have the same function as the noun to which they refer, and must, therefore, be in the same CASE; they must also have the same NUMBER, and the same GENDER. A singular noun must have a singular adjective, a plural noun must have a plural adjective; a masculine noun must have a masculine adjective, and so on.

(*Note:* GENDER in Greek is not the same as SEX. Males

are usually masculine and females feminine, though *κορασιον*, "a young girl", is neuter; but things may be of any gender, e.g. "table" and "chair" are feminine, "house" is masculine, and "book" is neuter. The gender is seen from the *form* of the word.)

We can now look at the forms of the words we have met already.

The forms ending in *-η* are called FIRST DECLENSION, the forms ending in *-ος* are called SECOND DECLENSION, and since adjectives have both forms we can get everything together by taking an adjective as an example.

κακος—bad

	<i>Singular</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	<i>κακ-ος</i>	<i>κακ-η</i>	<i>κακ-ον</i>
Voc.	<i>κακ-ε</i>	<i>κακ-η</i>	<i>κακ-ον</i>
Acc.	<i>κακ-ον</i>	<i>κακ-ην</i>	<i>κακ-ον</i>
Gen.	<i>κακ-ου</i>	<i>κακ-ης</i>	<i>κακ-ου</i>
Dat.	<i>κακ-ω</i>	<i>κακ-η</i>	<i>κακ-ω</i>
	<i>Plural</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	<i>κακ-οι</i>	<i>κακ-αι</i>	<i>κακ-α</i>
Voc.	<i>κακ-οι</i>	<i>κακ-αι</i>	<i>κακ-α</i>
Acc.	<i>κακ-ους</i>	<i>κακ-ας</i>	<i>κακ-α</i>
Gen.	<i>κακ-ων</i>	<i>κακ-ων</i>	<i>κακ-ων</i>
Dat.	<i>κακ-οις</i>	<i>κακ-αις</i>	<i>κακ-οις</i>

ἀγαθος has exactly the same endings.

ἀνθρωπος has the endings of the first column.

κορη has the endings of the second column.

Note: In all neuter nouns and adjectives the nom., voc. and acc. are the same, and all neuter plurals have alpha.

The dative case always has an iota, and the genitive plural always has *-ων*.

Sometimes the plural of an adjective may be used to express a general class, in which case the gender of the adjective is expressed in English by adding a word like "men" or "women" or "things", e.g. *κακοι* may mean "bad men", *κακαι* "bad women" and *κακα* "evil things".

THERE IS NO WORD IN GREEK TO EXPRESS "THINGS" IN A GENERAL SENSE. THIS IS ALWAYS DONE BY USING A NEUTER FORM OF AN ADJECTIVE OR THE NEUTER ARTICLE.

EXERCISE Ia

1. ὁ ἄνθρωπος ἐστίν* ἀγαθος.
2. ὁ ἀγαθος διδασκαλος γραφει τοὺς λόγους.
3. ἡ κορη βλέπει τὸ τοῦ κακοῦ ἀνθρώπου προσωπον.†
4. ὁ ἀδελφος ἀρπάζει τὸ τοῦ δούλου ἱματιον.
5. ὁ θεὸς τηρεῖ τὸν κόσμον.
6. ὁ λόγος τῆς γραφῆς ἐστίν ἀγαθος.
7. τὸ βιβλίον ἐστίν ἐν τῇ πηρᾷ.
8. ὁ ἄνθρωπος καθίζει ἐπὶ τῇ καθεδρᾷ.

EXERCISE Ib

1. The girl is good.
2. The bad man sees the good girl.
3. The teacher's book is good.
4. The girl speaks a word to the brother.
5. O man, God is good.

*Vocabulary I**Nouns*

ἄνθρωπος—man	κορη—girl
ἄδελφος—brother	πηρα—bag
διδασκαλος—teacher	καθεδρα—seat
δουλος—servant	γραφη—writing
θεος—god	ἱματιον—garment
κοσμος—world	προσωπον—face
λογος—word	βιβλιον—book

Adjectives

ἀγαθος—good	καλος—beautiful
κακος—bad	ἔσχατος—last
σοφος—wise	πιστος—faithful
πρωτος—first	τριτος—third

Verbs

ἔστι(ν)—is	τηρει—watches
γραφει—writes	καθιζει—sits
βλεπει—sees	διδασκει—teaches
ἄρπαζει—snatches	λεγει—says

(Note: * When ἔστι is followed by a vowel it adds a ν to help the pronunciation.)

† The possessive genitive is usually placed between the article and noun of the thing possessed.)

EXERCISE II

Write down the English words which are derived from the following Greek words:

νεος—λογος	μεσος—ποταμος	φιλος—ἀδελφος
οἶκος—νομος	θρονος	ἀριστος—κρατος
τυραννος	θεος—λογος	χλωρος—φυλλον
δημος—κρατος	μακρος—κοσμος	μικρος—σκοπος
κρυπτος—γραφη	ὁμοιος—παθος	ἀνεμος—μετρον
ἄγγελος	ζων—λογος	βιος—λογος
εἰδωλον	ὀρθος—δοξα	μικρος—φωνη
ῥυμος	φιλος—σοφια	κυκλος
ἱερος—ἀρχη	αὐτος—γραφη	μεγας—φωνη
μονος—ἀρχη	παλαιος—γραφη	

The following are the literal meanings of the words in English:

new—word	middle—river	friend—brother
house—law	—	best—rule
autocratic ruler	god—word	green—leaf
people—rule	large—world	small—looking
hidden—writing	like—suffering	wind—measure
messenger	animal—word	life—word
shadow, image	straight—opinion	little—sound
—	friend—wisdom	circle
sacred—rule	self—writing	big—sound
alone—rule	old—writing	

LESSON V

THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

Greek has no word for “ a ” (indefinite article) but it has a word for “ the ” (definite article).

It is used as in English, AND ALSO

- (i) With Abstract Nouns, e.g. Wisdom—*ἡ σοφία*.
- (ii) With words which signify whole classes, e.g. Men are good—*οἱ ἄνθρωποι εἰσιν ἀγαθοί*.
- (iii) With Proper Nouns, e.g. Jesus—*ὁ Ἰησοῦς* (but this is sometimes disregarded in the New Testament).

The declension of the article is as follows:

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	ὁ	ἡ	το	οἱ	αἱ	τα
Acc.	τον	την	το	τους	τας	τα
Gen.	του	της	του	των	των	των
Dat.	τω	τῇ	τω	τοῖς	ταῖς	τοῖς

Try to translate the following sentences from Greek authors:

1. *μεγα βιβλιον μεγα κακον* (Callimachus).
2. *ὁ ἀνεξεταστος* (unexamined) *βιος οὐ βιωτος ἄνθρωπων* (Plato).
3. *ἄνθρωπος πολιτικον ζων* (Aristotle).
4. *ὁ φιλος ἐστιν ἄλλος* (other) *αὐτος*.
5. *χρονος παιδευει τους σοφους*. (*παιδευει educates*).
6. *ἐν ἀρχῇ ἦν ὁ λογος και ὁ λογος ἦν προς* (towards) *τον θεον και θεος ἦν ὁ λογος*.
7. *ἐγω εἰμι το Ἄλφα και το Ὠμεγα, ἀρχη και τελος, ὁ πρωτος και ὁ ἐσχατος*.

The Verb "to be"

The verb "to be" does not express action, but tells us something about the state, condition or character of the subject, e.g. The man *is* bad; John *is* a doctor; Mary *was* in the house. "Bad" and "doctor" are not objects, since they are not affected by any action and therefore they are not put into the accusative case in Greek. They *complete* the sense of the sentence, so they are *complements*, they *predicate* some quality of the subject, so they are *predicates*.

RULE: THE VERB "TO BE" TAKES THE SAME CASE AFTER IT AS BEFORE IT.

The Indicative tenses of the verb "to be" are as follows:

<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Future</i>
<i>Singular</i>		
I am— <i>εἰμι</i>	I was— <i>ἦμην</i>	I shall be— <i>ἔσομαι</i>
You are— <i>εἶ</i>	You were— <i>ἦσθα</i>	You will be— <i>ἔσει</i>
He is	He was	He will be
She is } — <i>ἐστί(ν)</i>	She was } — <i>ἦν</i>	She will be } — <i>ἔσται</i>
It is }	It was }	It will be }
<i>Plural</i>		
We are— <i>ἐσμεν</i>	We were— <i>ἦμεν</i>	We shall be— <i>ἔσομεθα</i>
You are— <i>ἐστε</i>	You were— <i>ἦτε</i>	You will be— <i>ἔσεσθε</i>
They are— <i>εἰσι(ν)</i>	They were— <i>ἦσαν</i>	They will be— <i>ἔσονται</i>

(Note: In English "you" may be singular or plural; in turning it into Greek the context must be carefully noted to see which it is, and the proper form used.)

LESSON VI

NOUNS IN -ο—SECOND DECLENSION

It may seem a little strange to consider the Second Declension Nouns before we consider the First Declension, but since we have already looked at the Adjectives, it is convenient to start with the first column, and to recognize the superiority of the masculine!

The prevailing vowel in the endings of this declension is -ο and words ending in -ος in the nominative are all masculine, except about half-a-dozen, which are feminine, whilst words ending in -ον in the nominative are all neuter. These latter have -α in the nominative, vocative and accusative plural.

	<i>Masculine</i>		<i>Neuter</i>	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plura.</i>
Nom.	λογος	λογοι	βιβλιον	βιβλια
Voc.	λογε	λογοι	βιβλιον	βιβλια
Acc.	λογον	λογους	βιβλιον	βιβλια
Gen.	λογου	λογων	βιβλιου	βιβλιων
Dat.	λογω	λογοις	βιβλιω	βιβλιοις

Here are some more with their meanings:

ἀποστολος—apostle
 ἄρτος—bread
 θανατος—death
 κυριος—lord
 λαος—people

ἄργυριον—silver, money
 δαιμονιον—demon
 δενδρον—tree
 ἔργον—work
 εὐαγγελιον—gospel
 ἱερον—temple
 παιδιον—child
 πλοιον—boat

And these three are FEMININE:

ἐρημος—desert

παρθενος—maiden, girl

ὁδος—way, road

προβατον—sheep

τεκνον—child

σαββατον—sabbath

σημειον—sign, miracle

EXERCISE IIIa

1. το δένδρον ἐστὶν ἀγαθόν.
2. ὁ θεὸς φιλεῖ τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς.
3. τὰ παῖδια ἦν ἐν τῷ ποταμῷ.
4. ὁ φόβος τοῦ κυρίου ἐστὶν ἀρχὴ τῆς σοφίας.
5. ὁ λαὸς οὐ τηρεῖ τὸν λόγον τοῦ θεοῦ.

EXERCISE IIIb

6. The demons are in the world.
7. The apostle sees the books of the children.
8. The life of men is good.
9. Death is the lord of men.
10. The child is in the boat.

Vocabulary

φιλεῖ—loves

χρυσος—gold

οὐ—not (put immediately BEFORE the word it qualifies)

φοβος—fear

ἐν—in

(Note: Neuter plural nouns are often followed by a singular verb, as in sentence 3.)

LESSON VII

NOUNS IN *-α* AND *-η*—FIRST DECLENSION

There are four types of nouns in the First Declension, the first three being all Feminine and the fourth being masculine.

1. Nouns ending in *-η* declined like the feminine of *κακος*.

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	<i>κορη</i>	<i>κοραι</i>
Voc.	<i>κορη</i>	<i>κοραι</i>
Acc.	<i>κορην</i>	<i>κορας</i>
Gen.	<i>κορης</i>	<i>κορων</i>
Dat.	<i>κορη</i>	<i>κοραις</i>

You have already had:

<i>αρχη</i> —beginning	<i>διαθηκη</i> —testament
<i>σκηνη</i> —tent	<i>ζωη</i> —life
<i>γραφη</i> —writing	<i>ζωνη</i> —belt
<i>καταστροφη</i> —catastrophe	<i>φωνη</i> —sound, voice

Here are some more:

<i>αγαπη</i> —love	<i>συναγωγη</i> —synagogue
<i>γη</i> —earth	<i>τεχνη</i> —art, skill
<i>πηνη</i> —grief	<i>ειρηνη</i> —peace
<i>αργη</i> —anger	<i>κεφαλη</i> —head
<i>τολη</i> —commandment	<i>παραβολη</i> —parable
<i>καιοσνη</i> —righteousness	<i>ψυχη</i> —soul, life

2. Nouns whose stems end in *ε*, *ι* or *ο* have *-α* instead of *-η* in all their endings. These are called “*α*-pure” words.

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	πηρα	πηραι
Voc.	πηρα	πηραι
Acc.	πηραν	πηρας
Gen.	πηρας	πηρων
Dat.	πηρα	πηραις

Note: κορη is an exception to this rule, but it is not found in the New Testament and it has served our purpose, so can now be ignored.

You have already had:

σοφια—wisdom	δυσεντερια—dysentery
καθεδρα—seat	

Here are some more:

χωρα—country	επαγγελια—promise
θυρα—door	εξουσια—authority
ημερα—day	παραγγελια—commandment
καρδια—heart	βασιλεια—kingdom
ωρα—hour	αμαρτια—sin
γενεα—generation	αληθεια—truth
εκκλησια—assembly	χαρα—joy

3. Nouns with *-a* in the Nominative, and stems NOT ending in *ε*, *ι* or *ρ* have *-ης*, *-η* in Genitive and Dative singular. These are called “*α*-impure”.

The only ones you are likely to meet are:

γλωσσα—tongue	δοξα—opinion, glory
θαλασσα—sea	τραπεζα—table

Note also: Adjectives with stems ending in *ε*, *ι* or *ρ* also have *α*-pure endings, like:

	<i>Singular</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	μικρος	μικρα	μικρον
Voc.	μικρε	μικρα	μικρον
Acc.	μικρον	μικραν	μικρον
Gen.	μικρου	μικρας	μικρου
Dat.	μικρω	μικρα	μικρω
	<i>Plural</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	μικροι	μικραι	μικρα
Voc.	μικροι	μικραι	μικρα
Acc.	μικρους	μικρας	μικρα
Gen.	μικρων	μικρων	μικρων
Dat.	μικροις	μικραις	μικροις

Like this are:

ιερος—sacred	δευτερος—second	ἀξιος—worthy
ἅγιος—holy	δικαιος—just	ἕτερος—other
ἴδιος—own	καθαρος—pure	πονηρος—wicked
ὁμοιος—like	παλαιος—ancient	νεος—new

4. The first three classes are all Feminine, and the fourth class is Masculine. These nouns all indicate a profession or permanent characteristic of a man, and all except one end in -της. (The parallel Latin ending, from which many English words are derived, is -tor, e.g. doctor, actor, prosecutor, rector, etc.)

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	μαθητης	μαθηται
Voc.	μαθητα	μαθηται
Acc.	μαθητην	μαθητας
Gen.	μαθητου	μαθητων
Dat.	μαθητη	μαθηταις

Like this are:

βαπτιστης—Baptist

κλεπτης—thief

προφητης—prophet

στρατιωτης—soldier

πολιτης—citizen

εργατης—workman

δεσποτης—master

τελωννης—tax-collector

υποκριτης—play-actor, hypocrite

κριτης—judge

ληστης—robber

Also Proper Nouns like *Ἰωαννης*, *Ἰορδανης*, *Ἡρωδης*.

(Note: (i) To show that they are masculine, and to make it different from the nominative, the genitive is in *-ου*.

(ii) In the vocative they have *-α*.

(iii) One common noun, and a few Proper Nouns have *-α* for *η*: a young man—*νεανιας*—has singular *νεανιας*, *νεανια*, *νεανιαν*, *νεανιου*, *νεανια*.)

EXERCISE IVa

1. ἡ γλωσσα πολλων (many) ἐστιν αιτια κακων.
2. ὁ βιος βραχυς (short) ἢ τεχνη μακρα (Hippocrates).
3. λυπης ιατρος ἐστιν ὁ χρηστος φιλος (Menander).
4. ὁ θεος ἀγαπη ἐστιν, και ὁ μενων (he who remains) ἐν τη ἀγαπη μενει ἐν τῷ θεῷ και ὁ θεος ἐν αὐτῷ (him).
5. ἡ δικαιοσυνη και ἡ ἀληθεια και ἡ ἀγαπη εἰσιν ἐν τη βασιλεια του θεου.

EXERCISE IVb

6. The peace of God watches over the souls on earth.
7. God sees the grief of men's hearts and saves them (*αὐτους*).
8. The world is in sin and does not have love.
9. The apostle writes the Scriptures.
10. The voice of the Lord speaks words of truth.

αἰτία—cause	οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ—not (see note below)
βίος—life	γραφαι—Scriptures
καί—and	μένει—remains
ἐν—in, on (followed by Dative) (see Lesson XXII)	σωζει—saves
ἰατρος—doctor	ἔχει—has
μακρός—long	λαλεῖ—speaks
χρηστος—good, kind	

(Note: The first negative is used before a word beginning with a consonant, the second before a word beginning with a smooth breathing, and the third before a word beginning with a rough breathing.)

EXERCISE Va

(Some New Testament verses)

1. ἀγαπητοι, οὐκ ἐντολὴν καινὴν γράφω, ἀλλ' ἐντολὴν παλαιαν.
2. ἡ ἐντολὴ ἥ παλαια ἐστὶν ὁ λόγος ὃν (which) ἤκουσατε (you heard).
3. παιδια, ἐσχατὴ ὥρα ἐστὶν.
4. ἐν τούτῳ (in this) φανερα (clear) ἐστὶ τα τεκνα του θεου και τα τεκνα του διαβολου.
5. ἡ ἐντολὴ αὐτου (his) ζωὴ αἰωνιος ἐστὶν.
6. οὐκ ἐστὶ παρα (from) θεου ὁ ἄνθρωπος, ὅτι (because) το σαββατον οὐ τηρεῖ.
7. ἐγὼ εἰμι ἡ ὁδὸς και ἡ ἀληθεια και ἡ ζωὴ.
8. πολλοι (many) ἐσοντα πρωτοι ἐσχατοι και οἱ ἐσχατοι πρωτοι.
9. το τέλος (end) της παραγγελιας ἐστὶν ἀγαπη ἐκ καθαρας καρδιας.
10. κατεπαυσεν (rested) ὁ θεος ἐν τη ἡμερᾷ τη ἑβδομῃ ἀπο (from) παντων των ἔργων αὐτου.

(Note: *αἰώνιος*—eternal—has the same form in feminine as masculine (see Lesson XX). *ἀπο, παρα*—from (see Lesson XXII).)

EXERCISE Vb

Write down the Greek equivalents, in the proper cases, of the words in italics:

The life of a robber is not always happy. No one offers him *love*, he receives no *glory*, and *in his heart* he knows *the grief* of loneliness. But *he has skill* and cunning *in his work*. One day *a robber* saw a *tax-collector* going along the road. *The man* carried a *bag* and *in the bag* was *gold*. *The robber* waited until *the other man* came near and called to him. *The tax-collector* turned *his head* and saw *the robber* but did not know what to do. The robber asked him how he got *the gold* and the tax-collector showed him a *sheet of paper* on which was written *the law* of income-tax. The robber said, “Your *skill* in robbery is better than mine; keep your *gold*, *Master*.”

(Sheet of paper—*χαρτης*.)

LESSON VIII

THE VERB—PRESENT TENSE

Verbs alter their endings to denote:

(i) The person who does the action (e.g. I write, he writes).

(ii) The time at which it is done (e.g. I write, I wrote)

In English these variations only apply to a few parts of the verb, but in Indian languages and in Greek they apply to all. In Greek there are six different endings in each tense, three in the singular, called first, second, and third persons, and three in the plural (1s.—I, 2s.—you, 3s.—he, she, it; 1p.—we, 2p.—you, 3p.—they).

In English the different tenses (Past, Present, Future) are usually expressed by using an auxiliary verb, parts of the verbs “to be” and “to have”, but in Greek this is also done by altering the endings. This means that in Greek the form of the verb indicates not only the action, but the person doing it and the time. *γραφω* means “I write” or “I am writing”, and it is not necessary to use *ἔγω* before it because the ending *-ω* indicates the person.

The endings of the Present Indicative Tense in Greek are

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1st person I— <i>ω</i>	We— <i>ομεν</i>
2nd person You— <i>εις</i>	You— <i>ετε</i>
3rd person He, she, it— <i>ει</i>	They— <i>ουσι</i>

You have already met some verbs in the third person singular, *γραφει*, *βλεπει*, *ἀρπαζει*, *καθιζει*, *μενει*, *σωζει* *ἔχει*.

As with the nouns, the part of the verb which is constant

s called the **STEM**, and the part which changes is called the **ENDING**. If you remove the third person singular ending (-ει) from the above verbs you can add the other endings and get the complete Present Tense. To repeat all the forms of a tense is called "TO CONJUGATE". Here is the conjugation of the Present Tense of γραφω.

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1st person	γραφω	γραφομεν
2nd person	γραφεις	γραφετε
3rd person	γραφει	γραφουσι(ν)

(Note: The third person plural, like ἐστι, adds -ν before a following vowel to help pronunciation.)

A verb is usually referred to, and listed in dictionaries, by the first person singular of the present tense.

Here are some more verbs:

ἀκουω—hear	ἀποθνησκω—die	ἀποστελλω—send
βαλλω—throw	ἐγειρω—rouse	ἐσθιω—eat
εὕρισκω—find	κρινω—judge	λαμβανω—
λεγω—say	πιστευω—believe	take, receive
γινωσκω—know	μανθανω—learn	πινω—drink
κλεπτω—steal	ἄγω—lead	κατακρινω—condemn
χαίρω—rejoice	λύω—loosen	διδασκω—teach

ὅτε—when	κριτης—judge	ψευστης—liar
ὅτι—that, because	νεκρος—dead	σωτηρια—salvation
ἄλλα—but	εἰ—if	

EXERCISE VI

ὅτε ἄνθρωπος λεγει ὅτι ἐστὶν ἀγαθος, γινωσκω ὅτι
 ψευστης ἐστὶ. ἐν ἀνθρώποις ἡ ἁμαρτία μενει και οὐχ
 εὕρισκομεν ἀγαθον ἄνθρωπον ἐν τῷ κόσμῳ. ὅτε οἱ ἄνθρω-

ποι κρινουσιν ἄλλους, λεγουσιν ὅτι οἱ μαθηται οὐκ μανθανουσι, των ἰατρων οἱ φιλοι ἀποθνησκουσι, οἱ τελωναι κλεπτουσι. εἰ τους κριτικους ἀκουετε, πιστευετε ὅτι οὐκ ἔστιν ἄνθρωπος δικαιος και ἄξιος δοξης. ὁ θεος ἔστιν ἀγαθος, οἱ ἄνθρωποι πονηροι και ὑποκριται. λαμβανουσι τα των ἄλλων, ἔσθιουσι και πινουσι. ἄλλα ὁ θεος γινωσκει τας ἁμαρτίας των ἀνθρωπων και σωζει αὐτους. οἱ ἄνθρωποι ἀποθνησκουσιν ἐν ταις ἁμαρτιαῖς. ἀλλ' ὁ θεος ἐγειρει τους νεκρους· εἰ πιστενομεν, σωτηριαν ἔχομεν.

Note the declension of αὐτος, which is used as third person pronoun:

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
<i>Singular</i>			
Nom.	αὐτος—he	αὐτή—she	αὐτο—it
Acc.	αὐτον—him	αὐτήν—her	αὐτο—it
Gen.	αὐτου—of him, his	αὐτης—of her, hers	αὐτου—of it, its
Dat.	αὐτω—to him	αὐτῇ—to her	αὐτω—to it
<i>Plural</i>			
Nom.	αὐτοι—they	αὐται—they	αὐτα—they
Acc.	αὐτους—they	αὐτας—they	αὐτα—they
Gen.	αὐτων—of them	αὐτων—of them	αὐτων—of them, their
Dat.	αὐτοις—to them	αὐταις—to them	αὐτοις—to them

ἄλλος—"other"—is declined exactly the same. Note particularly that the nominative singular neuter is in -ο instead of -ον.

LESSON IX

THE VERB—FUTURE TENSE

This differs from the Present only by the addition of *-σ* between the stem and the ending: ἀκουω—ἀκουσω · πιστευω—πιστευσω.

If the last letter of the stem is a consonant, *σ* is assimilated to it:

π, πτ, β, φ	plus	σ	becomes	ψ
κ, γ, χ, σσ	„	σ	„	ξ
θ, ζ	„	σ	„	σ

Some verbs have vowel stems in *ε*, *α* or *ο* and in this case the future lengthens the vowel to *η* or *ω*: φιλεω—φιλήσω (I love), τιμαω—τιμήσω (I honour), πληρωω—πληρώσω (I fill). (These verbs will be dealt with more fully in Lesson XVII.)

(Note: Three exceptions to this last rule: καλεω—καλέσω (I call), τελεω—τελέσω (I complete), έαω—έασω (I allow).)

We can therefore construct the following typical Futures:

	<i>Diphthong stem</i>	<i>Consonant stem</i>
<i>Singular</i>		
I	ἀκουσω	γραφω
You	ἀκουσεις	γραφεις
He	ἀκουσει	γραψει
<i>Plural</i>		
We	ἀκουσομεν	γραφομεν
You	ἀκουσετε	γραφετε
They	ἀκουσουσι	γραφουσι

Vowel Stems

	(-εω)	(-αω)	(-οω)
<i>Singular</i>			
I	φιλησω	τιμησω	πληρωσω
You	φιλησεις	τιμησεις	πληρωσεις
He	φιλησει	τιμησει	πληρωσει
<i>Plural</i>			
We	φιλησομεν	τιμησομεν	πληρωσομεν
You	φιλησετε	τιμησετε	πληρωσετε
They	φιλησουσι	τιμησουσι	πληρωσουσι

The declension of the First and Second Person Pronouns is:

Nom.	I— <i>ἐγώ</i>	We— <i>ἡμεῖς</i>
Acc.	Me— <i>ἐμέ, με</i>	Us— <i>ἡμᾶς</i>
Gen.	My— <i>ἐμου, μου</i>	Our— <i>ἡμῶν</i>
Dat.	To me— <i>ἐμοί, μοί</i>	To us— <i>ἡμῖν</i>

		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	You—	<i>σὺ</i>	<i>ὕμεις</i>
Acc.	You—	<i>σε</i>	<i>ὕμας</i>
Gen.	Your—	<i>σου</i>	<i>ὕμων</i>
Dat.	To you—	<i>σοι</i>	<i>ὕμιν</i>

(Note: The shorter forms—*με, μου, μοί*—do not occur at the beginning of a phrase.)

THE TEN COMMANDMENTS

ἐγώ εἰμι κυριὸς ὁ θεὸς σου ὅστις (who) ἐξηγαγὼν (led) σε ἐκ γῆς Αἰγύπτου.

οὐκ ἔσονται σοὶ θεοὶ ἕτεροὶ πλὴν (except) ἐμου.

οὐ ποιήσεις εἰδῶλον · οὐ προσκυνήσεις αὐτοῖς, οὐδὲ λατρεύσεις αὐτοῖς · ἐγὼ γὰρ εἰμι κυριὸς ὁ θεὸς σου, θεὸς ζῆλωτης.

οὐ λημψει (you shall take) το ὄνομα κυριου του θεου σου
ἐπι ματαιῳ (in vain)

μνησθητι (remember) την ἡμεραν του σαββατου ἁγιαζειν
(to make holy) αὐτην· ἐξ ἡμερας ἐργασει (you shall
work) και ποιησεις παντα (all) τα ἔργα σου. τη δε ἡμερα
τη ἑβδομη σαββατον κυριου του θεου σου· οὐ ποιησεις
ἐν αὐτῇ ἔργον, συ και ὁ υἱος σου, και ἡ θυγατηρ σου,
ὁ παις σου και ἡ παιδισκη σου, ὁ βους σου και το ὑπο-
ζυγιον σου, και παν κτηνος (beast) και ὁ προσηλυτης ὁ
παροικων (dwelling) ἐν σοι.

τιμα (honour) τον πατερα και την μητερα σου.

οὐ μοιχευσεις· οὐ κλεψεις· οὐ φονευσεις· οὐ ψευδο-
μαρτυρησεις.

οὐκ ἐπιθυμησεις την γυναικα του πλησιον σου κ.τ.λ.

προσκυνεω—worship

λατρεω—serve

ποιεω—do, make

φονεω—murder

μοιχευω—commit adultery

ἐπιθυμειω—desire

ἕξ—six

ἑβδομος—seventh

ζηλωτης—jealous man

σαββατον—sabbath

παις—boy, servant

παιδισκη—maidservant

βους—ox

ὑποζυγιον—animal under
the yoke

προσηλυτης—stranger (cf.
proselyte)

ψευδομαρτυρεω—give false
evidence

ματαιος—vain

υἱος—son

θυγατηρ—daughter

ὄνομα—name

πλησιον—near-by

γυναικα—wife

πατερα—father

μητερα—mother

(These last three are in the accusative case; their declen-
sions are given in the next lesson.)

ἐκ—out of

ἐν—in, on

κ.τ.λ. (και τα λοιπα) is the abbreviation equivalent to “etc.”

Future Tenses of Liquid Verbs

Verbs whose stem ends in a liquid (λ , μ , ν , ρ) have somewhat different forms in the Future. The Greeks did not like the pronunciation of σ after these letters, so the σ was dropped and an ϵ which combined with the ending was put in its place. In four of the six forms the ϵ is absorbed into the diphthong of the ending, $-\omega$, $-\epsilon\iota\varsigma$, $-\epsilon\iota$ and $-\omicron\upsilon\sigma\iota$, but in the first and second person plural it turns the short vowel into a diphthong, $\omicron\upsilon$ and $\epsilon\iota$.

Words which have $\lambda\lambda$ in the Present Tense drop one λ in the Future, whilst words which have a diphthong in the stem before λ , ν , ρ shorten it in the Future. Here are some typical forms:

Present

$\mu\epsilon\nu\omega$	$\beta\alpha\lambda\lambda\omega$	$\acute{\alpha}\gamma\gamma\epsilon\lambda\lambda\omega$	$\alpha\iota\rho\omega$	$\sigma\pi\epsilon\iota\rho\omega$
(remain)	(throw)	(announce)	(lift up)	(sow)

Future

$\mu\epsilon\nu\omega$	$\beta\alpha\lambda\omega$	$\acute{\alpha}\gamma\gamma\epsilon\lambda\omega$	$\acute{\alpha}\rho\omega$	$\sigma\pi\epsilon\rho\omega$
$\mu\epsilon\nu\epsilon\iota\varsigma$	$\beta\alpha\lambda\epsilon\iota\varsigma$	$\acute{\alpha}\gamma\gamma\epsilon\lambda\epsilon\iota\varsigma$	$\acute{\alpha}\rho\epsilon\iota\varsigma$	$\sigma\pi\epsilon\rho\epsilon\iota\varsigma$
$\mu\epsilon\nu\epsilon\iota$	$\beta\alpha\lambda\epsilon\iota$	$\acute{\alpha}\gamma\gamma\epsilon\lambda\epsilon\iota$	$\acute{\alpha}\rho\epsilon\iota$	$\sigma\pi\epsilon\rho\epsilon\iota$
$\mu\epsilon\nu\omicron\upsilon\mu\epsilon\nu$	$\beta\alpha\lambda\omicron\upsilon\mu\epsilon\nu$	$\acute{\alpha}\gamma\gamma\epsilon\lambda\omicron\upsilon\mu\epsilon\nu$	$\acute{\alpha}\rho\omicron\upsilon\mu\epsilon\nu$	$\sigma\pi\epsilon\rho\omicron\upsilon\mu\epsilon\nu$
$\mu\epsilon\nu\epsilon\iota\tau\epsilon$	$\beta\alpha\lambda\epsilon\iota\tau\epsilon$	$\acute{\alpha}\gamma\gamma\epsilon\lambda\epsilon\iota\tau\epsilon$	$\acute{\alpha}\rho\epsilon\iota\tau\epsilon$	$\sigma\pi\epsilon\rho\epsilon\iota\tau\epsilon$
$\mu\epsilon\nu\omicron\upsilon\sigma\iota$	$\beta\alpha\lambda\omicron\upsilon\sigma\iota$	$\acute{\alpha}\gamma\gamma\epsilon\lambda\omicron\upsilon\sigma\iota$	$\acute{\alpha}\rho\omicron\upsilon\sigma\iota$	$\sigma\pi\epsilon\rho\omicron\upsilon\sigma\iota$

EXERCISE VIIa

τῆ ἑβδόμῃ ἡμέρᾳ ἄξομεν τὰ παιδιά εἰς τὰ δένδρα, καὶ διδάξομεν αὐτοὺς τὰ μυστήρια τῆς γῆς. βλέψουσι τοὺς καρπούς καὶ τὰ φύλλα. ἐν τοῖς ἀγροῖς οἱ δούλοι φυλαξοῦσι τὰ πρόβατα καὶ ὁ ἀγαθὸς δούλος σώσει αὐτὰ ἀπο τῶν ληστῶν.

EXERCISE VIIb

In the last day the judge of the world will sit in the

heavens and the angels will bring the men. You will hear the account (*λογος*) of your sins, and you will see the righteousness of God. He will save you from destruction and will have mercy on you. No one is worthy of his love, but we shall see his glory and shall believe in (*εις*, followed by accusative) him.

EXERCISE VIIIa

μακαριος ο ανθρωπος ος τηρει τας παραγγελιας του θεου . αυτος σωσει την ψυχην αυτου εν τη εσχατη ημερα. ος δε ου τηρει βλεπει την οργην του θεου. γνωσκομεν γαρ οτι οι αγγελοι γραφουσι τα εργα των ανθρωπων εν τω βιβλιω της ζωης. ο θεος κρινει τον κοσμον κατα (according to) τα εργα αυτων και πεμπει τους ανθρωπους εις τον μισθον. πεμπει τους αγαθους εις ζωην και τους κακους εις απωλειαν.

EXERCISE VIIIb

The teacher will teach the students the truth, but the students will not hear. They will desire wisdom, but they will not do the deeds of wisdom. Then the teacher will say, "You will seek me, but I shall not lead you to wisdom". The words of the teacher will remain in the hearts of the wicked students and will witness to them (*αυτοις*).

φυλασσω—guard

ουρανος—heaven

καρπος—fruit

ουδεις—no one

ος—who

μισθος—reward

μακαριος—happy

ελεω—have mercy on

απωλεια—destruction

ζητεω—seek

απο—from (followed by genitive)

τοτε—then

αγρος—field

πεμπω—send

μυστηριον—mystery

μαρτυρεω—witness

εις, προς—to (followed by accusative) (when expressing motion)

(*Note: δε*—but, *γαρ*—because, for. These two words are “enclitic”, which means that they cannot come as the first words in the phrase with which they are connected, though in English they are translated first. Note that “for” in English is ambiguous, and may mean “on behalf of”, “in the interest of”, as well as “because”. *γαρ* in Greek ONLY MEANS “FOR” WHEN IT IS EQUIVALENT TO “BECAUSE”.)

LESSON X

THIRD DECLENSION

The Third Declension includes all the nouns not in First or Second.

Some grammars make it very complicated and show as many as 60 types, but many of these have only minor differences, and some do not occur in the New Testament. There are really two main groups:

Group I—Consonant Stems—5 masculine or feminine types; 1 neuter.

Group II—Vowel Stems—3 masculine or feminine types; 1 neuter.

In some of the types nouns of both masculine and feminine gender are found, but some types are exclusively one or other. Neuter types are quite distinct and only have neuter nouns.

The endings of the Third Declension have the same basic form, but there are some modifications in Group II. They are as follows:

	<i>Masculine and Feminine</i>	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	(various)	-ες
Voc.	(various)	-ες
Acc.	-α	-ας
Gen.	-ο̇ς	-ων
Dat.	-ι	-οι

	<i>Neuter</i>			
	(I)		(II)	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	-μα	-ματα	-ος	-η
Voc.	-μα	-ματα	-ος	-η
Acc.	-μα	-ματα	-ος	-η
Gen.	-ματος	-ματων	-ους	-εων
Dat.	-ματι	-μασι	-ει	-εσι

To find the stems to which these endings are attached, drop the ending (-ος) of the Genitive Singular.

The Nominative Singular must be learned individually, but in most cases can be easily inferred.

Note that three endings have the same characteristic letters as First and Second Declensions—dative singular -ι; genitive plural -ων; neuter plural -α.

The Neuter nouns of Group II have vowel stems ending in -ε, and this combines with the usual Third Declension endings to produce the forms noted above.

The following words belong to the various types of Group I on page 40:

Type 1 λεων, λεοντος, ὄ—lion
 ὀδους, ὀδοντος, ὀ—tooth

Type 2 σαλπιγξ, σαλπιγγος, ἦ—trumpet
 σαρξ, σαρκος, ἦ—flesh
 γυνη, γυναικος, ἦ—woman, wife
 φλοξ, φλογος, ἦ—flame
 θριξ, τριχος, ἦ—hair

(Note: Vocative singular of γυνη is γυναι; dative plural of θριξ is θριξι.)

GROUP I—CONSONANT STEMS

Type No.	1	2	3	4	5	6
Nom.	ἄρχων	φυλαξ	ἐλπις	ποιμην	σωτηρ	γραμμα
Gen.	ἀρχοντος	φυλακος	ἐλπιδος	ποιμενος	σωτηρος	γραμματος
Gender	All M.	M. & F.	Usually F.	M. & F.	M. & F.	All Neuter
Meaning	ruler	guard	hope	shepherd	saviour	letter (of alphabet)
<i>Singular</i>						
Nom.	ἄρχων	φυλαξ	ἐλπις	ποιμην	σωτηρ	γραμμα
Voc.	ἄρχων	φυλαξ	ἐλπι	ποιμην	σωτερ	γραμμα
Acc.	ἀρχοντα	φυλακα	ἐλπιδα	ποιμενα	σωτηρα	γραμμα
Gen.	ἀρχοντος	φυλακος	ἐλπιδος	ποιμενος	σωτηρος	γραμματος
Dat.	ἀρχοντι	φυλακι	ἐλπιδι	ποιμενι	σωτηρι	γραμματι
<i>Plural</i>						
Nom. Voc.	ἀρχοντες	φυλακες	ἐλπιδες	ποιμενες	σωτηρες	γραμματα
Acc.	ἀρχοντας	φυλακας	ἐλπιδας	ποιμενας	σωτηρας	γραμματα
Gen.	ἀρχοντων	φυλακων	ἐλπιδων	ποιμενων	σωτηρων	γραμματων
Dat.	ἀρχουσι	φυλαξι	ἐλπισι	ποιμεσι	σωτηρσι	γραμμασι

Type 3	λαμπας, λαμπαδος, ἡ—lamp
	ἔρις, ἔριδος, ἡ—strife
	παις, παιδος, ὁ and ἡ—boy, girl
	νυξ, νυκτος, ἡ—night (dat. plur.— <i>νυξι</i>)
	πους, ποδος, ὁ—foot
	χαρις, χαριτος, ἡ—grace

(Note: Accusative singular of ἔρις is ἔριν; vocative singular of παις is παι.)

Accusative singular of χαρις is χαριν, except in one passage where it is χαριτα.)

Type 4	μην, μηνος, ὁ—month
	εἰκων, εἰκονος, ἡ—image
	ἡγεμων, ἡγεμονος, ὁ—leader
	κυν, κυνος, ὁ—dog
	χειμων, χειμωνος, ὁ—winter
	αἰων, αἰωνος, ὁ—age
	ἀμπελων, ἀμπελωνος, ὁ—vineyard
	χιτων, χιτωνος, ὁ—shirt, tunic
ἄγων, ἄγωνος, ὁ—game, contest	

(Note: The stem of κυν is κυν- and dative plural is κυνσι.)

There is no rule about whether a noun keeps the long vowel, like αἰων, or shortens it, like εἰκων. The difference must just be learnt.

πυρ (fire) is of this type, but is neuter, and is only found in the singular: nominative, vocative, accusative πυρ, genitive πυρος, dative πυρι.)

Type 5 (All these are partly irregular, so are given in full)

Nom.	χειρ	ἀστηρ	ἄνηρ	πατήρ	μητήρ	θυγατήρ
Gen.	χειρός	ἀστερος	ἄνδρος	πατρός	μητρός	θυγατρός
Gender	ἡ	ὁ	ὁ	ὁ	ἡ	ἡ
Meaning	hand	star	man	father	mother	daughter
<i>Singular</i>						
Nom.	χειρ	ἀστηρ	ἄνηρ	πατήρ	μητήρ	θυγατήρ
Voc.	χειρ	ἀστηρ	ἄνερ	πατερ	μητερ	θυγατερ
Acc.	χειρά	ἀστερα	ἄνδρα	πατερα	μητερα	θυγατερα
Gen.	χειρός	ἀστερος	ἄνδρος	πατρός	μητρός	θυγατρός
Dat.	χειρι	ἀστερι	ἀνδρι	πατρι	μητρι	θυγατρι
<i>Plural</i>						
Nom. Voc.	χειρες	ἀστερες	ἄνδρες	πατερες	μητερες	θυγατερες
Acc.	χειρας	ἀστερας	ἄνδρας	πατερας	μητερας	θυγατερας
Gen.	χειρων	ἀστερων	ἄνδρων	πατερων	μητερων	θυγατερων
Dat.	χερσι	ἀστρασι	ἀνδρασι	πατρασι	μητρασι	θυγατρασι

Type 6 (All Neuter)

χρημα—thing	ὄνομα—name
ἁμαρτημα—sin	στομα—mouth
πνευμα—spirit, wind	παθημα—suffering
θελημα—will	παραπτωμα—fault
σπερμα—seed	σωμα—body
ὄραμα—vision	βαπτισμα—baptism
αἷμα—blood	ῥημα—word
κριμα—judgement	σχισμα—division

These nouns are all formed from verbal stems, and indicate the *product* of the action of the verb.

In Group II, Type 1 are a number of words in *-σις* which are also from verbal stems and indicate the *process* of the action, e.g. from stem *κρι-* we get *κρισις* which means “act of judging”, whilst *κριμα* means “result of judging, verdict”. The English word “judgement” can be used in either sense, but Greek has separate words.

There is also a group of words which do not end in *-μα* but which otherwise have the same endings, and are also neuter:

τερας, τερατος—miracle	ὕδωρ, ὕδατος—water
φως, φωτος—light	ἅλας, ἅλατος—salt
οὖς, ὠτος—ear (dative plural ὠσι)	

The following words belong to the types of Group II:

Type 1

κρισις—judgement, *ἄφεσις*—forgiveness, *ἀναστασις*—resurrection, and many verbal nouns in *-σις*. All feminine.

Type 2

There are very few words of this type. *ὕς, ὕος*—pig, which is either masculine or feminine; *σταχυς*—ear of corn.

GROUP II—VOWEL STEMS

<i>Type No.</i>	1	2	3	4
Nom.	πολις	ἰχθυς	βασιλευς	γενος
Gen.	πολεως	ἰχθυος	βασιλεως	γενους
Gender	F.	M.	M.	N.
Meaning	city	fish	king	race, nation
<i>Singular</i>				
Nom.	πολις	ἰχθυς	βασιλευς	γενος
Voc.	πολι	ἰχθυ	βασιλευ	γενος
Acc.	πολιν	ἰχθυν	βασιλευα	γενος
Gen.	πολεωζ	ἰχθυοζ	βασιλεωζ	γενουζ
Dat.	πολει	ἰχθυι	βασιλει	γενει
<i>Plural</i>				
Nom. Voc.	πολεις	ἰχθυες	βασιλεις	γενη
Acc.	πολεις	ἰχθυαζ	βασιλευαζ (-εις)	γενη
Gen.	πολεων	ἰχθυων	βασιλεων	γενεων (γενων)
Dat.	πολεσι	ἰχθυσι	βασιλευσι	γενεσι

Type 3

Words expressing an office, such as *ιερευς*—priest, *γραμματευς*—scribe, *γονευς*—parent. All masculine.

Type 4

ετος—year, *κερδος*—gain, *ορος*—mountain, *σκοτος*—darkness, *πληθος*—crowd, *τελος*—end. All neuter.

DO NOT MIX THESE UP WITH SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS.

EXERCISE IXa

1. οἱ μὲν ἄνθρωποι ἔχουσι χεῖρας καὶ ποδας, οἱ δὲ κύνες μόνον ποδας.
2. αἱ λαμπάδες λαμπουσὶν ἐν ταῖς χερσὶ τῶν θυγατέρων.
- 3.

A Boy's Epitaph

- δωδεκ' ἔτων τὸν παῖδα πατὴρ ἀπέθηκε (laid) Φίλιππος ἐνθάδε (here) τὴν πολλὴν (great) ἐλπίδα, Νικοτέλην.
4. παντῶν χρημάτων ἄνθρωπος μέτρον ἐστίν.
 5. ἐν τῷ Νεῖλῳ κροκοδειλοὶ πολλοὶ (many) εἰσὶν · οἱ Αἰγυπτιοὶ οὐκ ἀποκτείνουσιν αὐτούς, ἱεροὺς νομιζόντες (thinking). ὁ κροκοδειλὸς τοὺς τοῦ χειμῶνος μηνᾶς οὐκ ἐσθίει οὐδέν, καὶ τὸ πολὺ (most) τῆς ἡμέρας διατριβεῖ ἐν τῇ γῆ, τὴν δὲ νύκτα ἐν τῷ ποταμῷ · θερμότερον (warmer) γὰρ ἐστὶ τὸ ὕδωρ τοῦ αἵθερος (than the air—see Lesson XXI). ἔχει δὲ ὁ κροκοδειλὸς ὀφθαλμοὺς ὕψους, μεγάλους (big) ὀδόντας κατὰ λόγον (in proportion) τοῦ σώματος. γλώσσαν δὲ μόνον ζῶων οὐκ ἔχει, οὐδὲ κινεῖ τὴν κατὰ ἄνω γνάθον. οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι φευγόνσιν αὐτόν, ὁ δὲ τροχιλὸς (wagtail) ἐν εἰρήρῃ ἐστίν. ὁ γὰρ κροκοδειλὸς ἐν τῷ ποταμῷ ἔχει τὸ στόμα μέστον βδελλῶν (full of leeches). ἐκβᾶς δὲ (coming out) εἰς τὴν γῆν ἀνοίγει τὸ στόμα καὶ ὁ τροχιλὸς ἐμβᾶνει εἰς αὐτό καὶ καταπίνει τὰς βδελλάς · ὁ δὲ κροκοδειλὸς οὐ βλάπτει αὐτόν.

ἀποκτείνω—kill	οὐδέν—nothing	διατριβῶ—spend
αἶθρῆ—air	κινεῖ—moves	ὄφθαλμος—eye
γνάθος—(fem.) jaw	κατω—lower	φευγῶ—flee
ἀνοιγῶ—open	ἔμβαινῶ—enter	βλαπτῶ—harm
καταπίνῶ—drink up	δώδεκα—twelve	μόνον—only

... μὲν . . . , . . . δὲ These two words are “enclitic”, i.e. they cannot be first word in a sentence. They are used to contrast two phrases, and when preceded by an article they mean “the one . . .”, “the other . . .”

EXERCISE IXb

A boy is a wonderful animal. When he is small he sees visions of hope and knows that he will do good things in the world. When he is a student he reads his books and learns many things (πολλά). His parents rejoice in his wisdom, and believe that he will seek glory in the world. The lamp of truth shines in his eyes, and his ears hear the voice of knowledge. He is a leader of the contest and his name is in the mouths of men. When he finds a wife he leaves his father and mother, and watches over her. He guards her image in his heart and rejoices in her grace. The power of his body is strong, but it does not remain, and the end of a man draws near. His hair is white, he has no teeth and the flame of his spirit dies in the darkness.

wonderful—θαυμαστός	read—ἀναγινώσκω
knowledge—γνώσις, -εως, ἡ	leave—καταλείπω
power—δύναμις, -εως, ἡ	draw near—ἐγγίζω
white—λευκός	strong—ἰσχυρός

LESSON XI

THE VERB—PAST TENSES

You have seen how the Future Tense is formed by adding *-σ-* to the stem of the Present. The Simple Past Tense, which is called the AORIST (unlimited) also has the additional *-σ-* but its endings mostly have *-α-* in them. You must also look at the beginning of the word as well as the end. The Future, like the donkey, has a tail added; the Past is like the elephant, with a trunk as well! The “trunk” is the letter *ε* which is placed before the stem, and is called the AUGMENT.

For example, the Aorist of πιστευω is:

ἐπιστευσ ^α —I believed	ἐπιστευσ ^α μεν—we believed
ἐπιστευσ ^α ς—you believed	ἐπιστευσ ^α τε—you believed
ἐπιστευσ ^ε (ν)—he believed	ἐπιστευσ ^{αν} —they believed

Note the following points:

1. 2nd person singular still ends in *-ς*.
1st person plural still ends in *-μεν*.
2nd person plural still ends in *-τε*.
2. The same rules about consonant stems which were given for the Future also apply to the Aorist, e.g. βλεπω—ἐβλεψ^α, γραφω—ἐγραψ^α, διδασκω—ἐδίδαξ^α, λεγω—ἐλεξ^α.
3. Verbs with stems in *ε*, *α*, or *ο*, lengthen the vowel, as the Future, e.g. φιλεω—ἐφιλησ^α, τιμαω—ἐτιμησ^α, πληρωω—ἐπληρωσ^α (see Lesson XVII).
4. The Augment is always added to the front of a Past Tense, and if the verb begins with a vowel the Augment combines with it, according to the following rules:

ε—α	becomes	η,	e.g.	ἀκουω	becomes	ἤκουσα
ε—ε	„	η,	„	ἐγειρω	„	ἤγειρα
ε—ο	„	ω,	„	ὁμολογεω (I confess)		becomes ὠμολόγησα
ε—αι	„	η,	„	αἰτεω (I ask)	becomes	ἤτησα
ε—οι	„	ω,	„	οἴκεω (I dwell)	„	ῶκησα

Note that the iota is written subscript.

5. In a verb which is compounded with a preposition Augment goes *after* the preposition, and *before* the main verb. Since most of the prepositions end in a vowel this also brings two vowels together, but in this case THE LAST VOWEL OF THE PREPOSITION IS DROPPED, except in the case of three prepositions *περι*, *προ*, *ἀμφι* (see Lesson XXII).

So far you have had the following compound verbs. See how the Augment is added in each of these cases:

ἀπο κτεινω—ἀπ εκτεινα	προσ κυνεω—προσ εκκυνησα
ἀπο στελλω—ἀπ εστειλα	κατα κρινω—κατ εκρινα
ἐπι θυμew—ἐπ εθυμησα	δια τριβω—δι ετριψα

6. The Liquid Verbs (with stems in λ, μ, ν, ρ) have similar peculiarities in the Aorist as in the Future, since they have no -σ-. Also they strengthen the vowel of the stem, but their endings are the same as the regular verb:

μενω—ἐμεινα	αἰρω—ἤρα
κρινω—ἐκρινα	σπειρω—ἐσπειρα
κτεινω—ἐκτεινα	ἐγειρω—ἤγειρα
στελλω—ἐστειλα	φθειρω (I destroy)—ἐφθειρα
ἀγγελλω—ἤγγειλα	

The Imperfect Tense

The Aorist merely says that something happened in the Past, without any further limitation ("I did"). There is another tense which is used for an action which was either CONTINUOUS ("I was doing"), or REPEATED ("I used to do") or HABITUAL. This is called the Imperfect, and is formed from the Present, with the Augment added to show that it is Past. The vowels in the ending are ϵ and o as in the Present, and all the endings are short.

Singular

ἐπιστευον—I was believing
 επιστευες—you were believing
 ἐπιστευε(ν)—he was believing

Plural

ἐπιστευομεν—we were believing
 ἐπιστευετε—you were believing
 ἐπιστευον—they were believing

It is important to distinguish these two tenses and to note that unless there is a need to emphasize that an action is continuous or habitual, Greek prefers to use the Aorist.

The Second (Strong) Aorist

In English the Past Tense may be formed in one of two ways:

1. By adding -ed to the stem, e.g. I live—I lived; I hope—I hoped; I save—I saved.
2. By strengthening the stem vowel, e.g. I sing—I sang; I give—I gave; I bring—I brought.

This second form is called the STRONG or SECOND AORIST, in contrast to the WEAK or FIRST AORIST, which just adds -ed.

The same two types are found in Greek, and as in English, there is no rule about which type a particular verb uses, so they must be learned individually. The endings are like the Imperfect, the difference being in the stem.

The following are the most common SECOND AORISTS:

<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Second Aorist</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
βαλλω	ἔβαλλον	ἔβαλον	throw
ἁμαρτανω	ἤμαρτανον	ἤμαρτον	sin
λαμβάνω	ἐλάμβανον	ἔλαβον	take, receive
μανθάνω	ἐμανθάνον	ἐμαθον	learn
πίνω	ἐπίνον	ἐπιον	drink
ἀπο-θνήσκω	ἄπ-εθνήσκον	ἄπ-εθانون	die
εὕρισκω	εὕρισκον	εὗρον [ἠύρον]	find
πίπτω	ἐπίπτον	ἔπεσον	fall
τίκτω	ἔτικτον	ἔτεκον	bring forth child
κατα-λείπω	κατ-ελείπον	κατ-ελιπον	leave
φεύγω	ἔφευγον	ἔφυγον	run away, flee
ἄγω	ἤγον	ἤγαγον	lead
γινώσκω	ἔγινώσκον	ἔγνων	know
βαίνω	ἐβαινον	ἔβην	go
[ὄραω]	(see	εἶδον	see
Lesson XVII)			
[λέγω]	ἔλεγον	εἶπον	say
[ἔχω]	εἶχον	ἔσχον	have
[ἔσθιω]	ἤσθιον	ἔφαγον	eat
[πάσχω]	ἔπασχον	ἔπαθον	suffer
[ἔρχομαι]	(see	ἦλθον	come, go
Lesson XIV)			
[φέρω]	ἔφερον	ἤνεγκον	carry

The last seven verbs are DEFECTIVE, that is to say, the

Aorist is formed from a different stem from the Present. Originally there were two verbs of similar meaning, and parts of each have got lost, and the remaining parts put together as though they were one verb.

The Aorists of *γινωσκω*, and *βαινω* are irregular:

έγνων, έγνως, έγνω, έγνωμεν, έγνωτε, έγνωσαν
έβην, έβης, έβη, έβημεν, έβητε, έβησαν

EXERCISE Xa. THE GOVERNOR

ό ήγεμων ήν καλος και αγαθος άνηρ. τα χρηματα ούκ έτηρησεν έν ταις χερσιν αύτου, άλλ' έβοήθησε τοις μαθηταις. ή μητηρ του πατρος αύτου έλαμβανε πεντε άργυρια κατα μηνας (monthly) άπο των της πολεως ευαγγελιστων. και οι ευαγγελισται έδιδασκον τον πατερα δωρεαν (freely). δια τουτο (therefore), ό ήγεμων ειπεν ότι αυτοι ήσαν σωτηρες του πατρος και έτιμησεν αυτους. έν τη του δημου εκκλησια έμαρτυρησε την πιστιν, και ήτησεν έλευθεριαν τοις χριστιανοις. πεντε έτη ήγεμονευε της έπαρχιας και παντες (all men) έφιλησαν αυτον και έτιμησαν αυτον. το όνομα αυτου ήν έν τοις του πληθους στομασι και το τελος αυτου έπληρωσεν αυτους λυτης.

<i>βοηθεω—help</i>	<i>τιμαω—honour</i>	<i>παντες—all men</i>
(followed by dative)		
<i>έλευθερια—freedom</i>	<i>πεντε—five</i>	<i>δημος—people</i>
<i>έπαρχια—province</i>	<i>αιτεω—ask for</i>	<i>πληρωω—I fill</i>
<i>πιστις, -εως, ή—faith</i>		

EXERCISE Xb

His parents sent the boy to the city because there was no work in the vineyard. In his hand was a little money, and in his heart was hope. He walked along the road by night (*νυκτος*) and saw the stars in the heavens. In the

city he sought the house of a priest and asked for food, but the priest did not help him. The dogs barked and seized his garment, but he struck their mouths and they were silent. In another house he saw the flame of a fire and a lamp by the side of an image, and he asked for bread and water. He heard the voice of a woman in the house, and she said to her daughter, "Give (*δος*) bread to the boy".

ὀλιγος—little *βρωμα*—food *φωνεω*—bark

σιωπαω—be silent *περιπατεω*—walk

παρα—followed by the accusative case means "along"
followed by the dative case means "by the side of"
(see Lesson XXII).

EXERCISE XIa. A FABLE OF AESOP

κων ὃς κρεας ἔφερε, ποταμον διεβαινε. ὅτε δε εἶδε την ἑαυτου σκιαν ἐπι του ὕδατος ὑπελαβεν ὅτι ἕτερος κων ἔστι και κρεας ἔχει. ἀπεβαλεν οὖν το ἰδιον κρεας και το του ἕτερου ἤρπαζε ὡστε ἀπωλεσεν (he lost) ἀμφοτερα. το μεν γαρ οὐκ ἦν, το δε εἰς τον ποταμον ἔπεσε.

κρεας, κρεατος, το—meat *ἑαυτον, ἑαυτου, ἑαυτω*—himself

σκια, σκιας, ἡ—shadow *ὑπολαμβάνω*—think, conjecture

ἀμφοτερος—both *ὡστε*—so that

EXERCISE XIb

The king went to another city and left his money in the hands of his servants. One servant received ten talents, another five and another two. The king remained in the other city for six months and then returned to his house. He called his servants who (*οἱ*) came and brought the talents. The first servant said, "See, I received ten talents and now I have twenty". The second servant said, "See,

I received five talents, and now I have ten". The king honoured the good servants who (*οἱ*) brought back the money. The third servant said, "I knew that the king had much (*πολλά*) money, so I ate and drank and now I have nothing (*οὐδέν*)". The king said, "You wicked servant, who (*ὁς*) did not learn wisdom", and threw him out of the city.

ταλαντον—talent (£240)

ἀναφερω—bring back

νυν—now

δυο—two *πεντε*—five *ἕξ*—six *δεκα*—ten

εἰκοσι—twenty

ὑπαγω—return

ἐκβάλλω—throw out

ἴδου—see

LESSON XII

INFINITIVES AND PARTICIPLES

1. *Infinitives*

I like <u>to teach</u> (general)	θελω <u>διδασκειν</u>
You like <u>to learn</u> (general)	θελετε <u>μανθανειν</u>
I want <u>to teach</u> this (particular)	θελω <u>διδαξαι</u> τουτο
You want <u>to learn</u> this (particular)	θελετε <u>μαθειν</u> τουτο

English has only one Infinitive, but Greek has four, though only two are common in the New Testament. In the above sentences are the Present Infinitive (in the first pair) and the Aorist Infinitive (in the second pair). The difference between them is not a matter of time, but of THE KIND OF ACT. The Present Infinitive is ONLY used to emphasize that the action is *continuous* or *habitual*, and therefore the Aorist Infinitive is more common in Greek. It is a safe rule—"When in doubt use the Aorist Infinitive."

The Aorist Infinitive has no Augment, since it does not refer to Past time.

The Subject of the Infinitive is usually in the Accusative Case.

The negative of the Infinitive is *μη* instead of *ου*.

The endings of the Infinitive in the Active are:

Present Infinitive	.	.	ειν—λυειν (to loosen)
1st Aorist Infinitive	.	.	σαι—λυσαι („ „)
2nd Aorist Infinitive	.	.	ειν—μαθειν (to learn)
Future Infinitive	.	.	σειν—λυσειν (to be
(but this is rare)			about to loosen)

The Infinitive of *ειμι* is *ειναι*, and the Second Aorist

Infinitives of *γινωσκω* and *βαινω* are *γνωναί* and *βηγναι* respectively.

(Note: This is your first introduction to the Greek “pattern verb”—*λυω* (I loosen)—which is used in all grammar books as an example. It is not one of the commonest verbs in the New Testament, but it has the great virtue of being completely regular, and also short. You will now meet it frequently and should get to know it thoroughly.)

EXERCISE XIIa

καλον ἐστιν ἀνθρωπον φαγειν και πιειν οτι ἐλαβε το σωμα απο του θεου. καλον ἐστι ζητησαι την σοφιαν οτι ο σοφος γινωσκει τα μυστηρια του κοσμου. ει δε θελεις μαθειν την ἀληθειαν, δει σε αιτησαι τον θεον βοηθησαι σοι. ο ανθρωπος ου δυνατος ἐστιν εὔρειν την δικαιοσυνην ἐν τῷ κοσμῷ. θελει ποιησαι το αγαθον ἀλλα ου θελει τηρειν τας ἐντολας του θεου. θελει γνωναί την ἀληθειαν ἀλλ' ου θελει καταλιπειν τα ἴδια νοηματα και ποιησαι το θελημα του θεου. το θελημα του θεου ἐστιν αγαθον και ποιειν αὐτο ἐστι ζηη τοις ἀνθρωποις. ἡ μεν ἁμαρτια μενει ἐν τοις ἀνθρωποις ὡστε αὐτους ἀποθανειν. ἡ δε ἀγαπη του θεου σωζει αὐτους ὡστε εἰσελθειν εἰς την βασιλειαν αὐτου.

δει—it is necessary *δυνατος*—able, possible
νοημα—thought

ὡστε followed by Accusative and Infinitive, expresses result—“so that”.

EXERCISE XIIb

If you wish to do good, it is necessary to keep the commandments of God, and the first commandment is to love men. Jesus spoke a parable about love. He said that to love men * was to help them. The priest and the Levite

were not willing to help the man, but the Samaritan carried him to the inn and told the innkeeper to care for him. The will of the Samaritan was to do good to the man, and thus he kept the commandments of God.

about—περι (with genitive)	be willing—θελω, aorist
inn—πανδοχειον	ήθελισα
thus—ούτως	Samaritan—Σαμαρειτης
Jesus—Ιησους	care for—θεραπεινω
Levite—Λευιτης	love—use φιλεω
innkeeper—πανδοχειυς	

(Note: * When spoken words are reported in Greek the tense of the verb does *not* depend on the verb of speaking, as in English. The tense of the original saying is retained. In this paragraph the original saying is “to love men is to help them”, but in English “is” becomes “was” after “said”, which is a Past tense. In Greek *this does not happen*, but “is” remains “is”.)

2. Participles

Consider the following verse:

“A fellow-feeling makes us wondrous kind”
 Methinks the poet would have changed his mind
 If he had found some fellow feeling in his coat behind.

Clearly “fellow-feeling” does not quite mean the same in the first and third lines. Why? Because “fellow” in the first line is an adjective describing “feeling”, and in the third line it is a noun. Further, “feeling” in the first line is a noun, whilst in the third line it is a PARTICIPLE, which (a) says something about the fellow, and therefore has the force of an adjective, and (b) describes an action, and therefore has the force of a verb. It is therefore called a VERBAL ADJECTIVE.

In English there are only two Participles, the Present Participle in -ing, and the Past Participle in -ed, the former being active and the latter passive, but the use of participles is very loose, e.g.

1. She went out *crying* bitterly.
2. *Saying* "BAH", he turned and dashed out.

The two forms are exactly the same, but obviously in the first case the lady's crying went on for some time, whereas in the second case the whole effect of "BAH" demands a short, sharp word. Also the time is different, since the lady's crying was simultaneous with her going out, whereas the man's exclamation came first, and then he went out.

The Greeks were more careful and used participles accurately; each of the four participles has its proper use, at the proper time.

The *Present Participle* refers to an action *simultaneous* with the main verb.

The *Future Participle* refers to an action *after* the main verb (but this is very rare in N.T. Greek).

The *Aorist Participle* refers to an action *before* the main verb.

The *Perfect Participle* (see next lesson) refers to a *state* simultaneous with the main verb, which has resulted from an action before it.

(*Note specially*: the time reference of the Participle is always RELATIVE TO THE MAIN VERB.)

The Participle is an *adjective*, so like all adjectives it must agree with the noun to which it refers in number, gender and case.

The Participle is a *verb* and so it may govern an object, like any other part of the verb.

The negative used with the Participle is $\mu\eta$, not $\omicron\upsilon$.

Examples:

1. The man, crossing the river, saw a dog.
ὁ ἄνθρωπος, διαβαίνων τον ποταμον, εἶδε κυνα
2. The man saw a dog crossing the river.
ὁ ἄνθρωπος εἶδε κυνα διαβαίνοντα τον ποταμον.
3. The woman, crossing the river, saw a sheep.
ἡ γυνη διαβαίνουσα τον ποταμον εἶδε προβατον.
4. The woman saw a sheep crossing the river.
ἡ γυνη εἶδε προβατον διαβαίνον τον ποταμον.
5. The sheep of the man crossing the river was white.
το προβατον του διαβαίνοντος τον ποταμον ἦν λευκον.

Declension of Participles. In the Masculine and Neuter the Participle has Third Declension endings, and in the Feminine it has First Declension endings of the α -impure type:

	<i>Present type</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Singular</i>			
Nom.	λυ-ων	λυ-ουσα	λυ-ον
Voc.	λυ-ων	λυ-ουσα	λυ-ον
Acc.	λυ-οντα	λυ-ουσαν	λυ-ον
Gen.	λυ-οντος	λυ-ουσης	λυ-οντος
Dat.	λυ-οντι	λυ-ουση	λυ-οντι
<i>Plural</i>			
Nom.	λυ-οντες	λυ-ουσαι	λυ-οντα
Acc.	λυ-οντας	λυ-ουσας	λυ-οντα
Gen.	λυ-οντων	λυ-ουσων	λυ-οντων
Dat.	λυ-ουσι	λυ-ουσαις	λυ-ουσι

First Aorist type
Masc. Fem. Neut.

Singular

Nom.	<i>λυ-σ-ας</i>	<i>λυ-σ-ασα</i>	<i>λυ-σ-αν</i>
Voc.	<i>λυ-σ-ας</i>	<i>λυ-σ-ασα</i>	<i>λυ-σ-αν</i>
Acc.	<i>λυ-σ-αντα</i>	<i>λυ-σ-ασαν</i>	<i>λυ-σ-αν</i>
Gen.	<i>λυ-σ-αντος</i>	<i>λυ-σ-ασης</i>	<i>λυ-σ-αντος</i>
Dat.	<i>λυ-σ-αντι</i>	<i>λυ-σ-αση</i>	<i>λυ-σ-αντι</i>

Plural

Nom.	<i>λυ-σ-αντες</i>	<i>λυ-σ-ασαι</i>	<i>λυ-σ-αντα</i>
Acc.	<i>λυ-σ-αντας</i>	<i>λυ-σ-ασας</i>	<i>λυ-σ-αντα</i>
Gen.	<i>λυ-σ-αντων</i>	<i>λυ-σ-ασων</i>	<i>λυ-σ-αντων</i>
Dat.	<i>λυ-σ-ασι</i>	<i>λυ-σ-ασαις</i>	<i>λυ-σ-ασι</i>

(Note: The Participle of *εἶμι* is *ὦν, οὔσα, ὄν*.)

The Aorist Participle of *γινωσκω* is *γνους, γνουσα, γνον*.

The Aorist Participle of *βαινω* is *βας, βασα, βαν*.

The endings of the Future Participle and of the Second Aorist Participle are exactly the same as the Present, but the stem, of course, is different.)

EXERCISE XIIIa

και ἦν ἀνηρ ἐν Βαβυλωνι και ὄνομα αὐτῷ Ἰωακειμ. και ἔλαβεν γυναίκα ἣ ὄνομα Σουσαννα, θυγατὴρ Χελκειοῦ, καλὴ και εὐσεβουσα τὸν Κυριον. και οἱ γονεῖς αὐτῆς ἦσαν δικαιοι και ἐδίδαξαν τὴν θυγατέρα αὐτῶν κατὰ τὸν νομὸν Μωυσεως. και δυο πρεσβυτεροι ἔλθοντες εἰς τὸν οἶκον Ἰωακειμ και ἰδόντες τὴν γυναίκα περιπατοῦσαν ἐν τῷ παραδεισῷ τοῦ ἀνδρὸς αὐτῆς και ἐπιθυμησαντες αὐτῆς ἐξεκλιναν τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς αὐτῶν ποιῆσαι κακά. και ἦλθεν ἡ γυνὴ εἰς τὸν παραδεισον και οἱ δυο πρεσβυτεροι ἦσαν βλέποντες αὐτήν.

EXERCISE XIIIb

The wicked elders, coming into the assembly, said that the woman was speaking with a young man, but they, turning him out of the garden, seized her. Hearing the words of the elders, the people condemned Susanna to die, but Daniel, jumping up, cried, "I am innocent of the blood of the woman". Then he commanded the first elder to say where the woman was speaking with the young man, and he said "Under a fig-tree". Then he asked the second elder, and he said to him "Under an olive-tree". But Daniel, hearing, said, "The two elders are speaking lies", and so he saved the woman.

turn out—ἐκ | βαλλω

seize—κρατεω

cry out—βοαω

where—ὅπου

olive-tree—ἐλαια, -ας, ἡ

reverence—εὐσεβειω

bend—ἐκ | κλινω

under—ὑπο followed by dative (Lesson XXII)

speak—λεγω

with—μετα followed by genitive (Lesson XXII)

condemn—κατα | κρινω

jump up—ἀνα | πηδαω

innocent—ἀθωος

fig-tree—συκη, -ης, ἡ

lie—ψευδος, -ους, το

garden—παραδεισος

desire—ἐπι | θυμew

according to—κατα

command—κελευω

Daniel—Δανιηλ

ask (question)—ἔρωταω

LESSON XIII

THE VERB—PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT TENSES

The Perfect Tense describes a PRESENT STATE OR CONDITION, resulting from a Past Action;

The Pluperfect Tense describes a PAST STATE OR CONDITION, resulting from an action prior to it.

It must always be remembered that the Perfect Tense is PRIMARILY concerned with the PRESENT time, e.g.

τεθνηκε the perfect of *ἀποθνησκω* does not mean “he died”, but “he *is now* dead”.

γεγραφα the perfect of *γραφω* means “it *is there* on the blackboard, because I wrote it”.

The Perfect is formed by a kind of stutter, in which the first consonant of the word, followed by *ε*, is put in front of the stem. This is called REDUPLICATION, e.g.

πιστευω—πεπιστευκα

σωζω—σεσωκα

τιμαω—τετιμηκα

λυω—λελυκα

μαρτυρω (bear witness)—*μεμαρτυρηκα*

δουλω (enslave)—*δεδουλωκα*

When the first letter is an aspirated letter, the equivalent unaspirated letter is used in the reduplication, e.g.

φιλω—πεφιληκα

θεωρω—τεθεωρηκα

When the first letter of the stem is a vowel, it is lengthened in place of the reduplication, e.g.

αἶτεω—ἤτηκα

ἀγαπαω (love)—ἠγαπηκα

The distinguishing letters of the Perfect ending are κα-

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>
1st person	λε-λυ-κα—I have loosed		λε-λυ-καμεν—we have loosed
2nd person	λε-λυ-κας etc.		λε-λυ-κατε, etc.
3rd person	λε-λυ-κε		λε-λυ-κασι
	Infinitive—λελυκεναι		
	Participle—λελυκως, λελυκυια, λελυκος (gen.)—λελυκοτος, λελυκυιας, λελυκοτος		

Second (Strong) Perfects

Just as there are Second Aorists, there are also Second Perfects, or "Strong Perfects". The endings are the same, except that κ is omitted. The most common of these are:

ἀκουω—ἀκηκοα

γραφω—γεγραφα

κραζω (cry out)—κεκραγα

κρυπτω (hide)—κεκρυφα

πασχω—πεπονθα

λαμβάνω—εἰληφα

Note also: γεγωνα—I have become, I am

ἔληλυθα—I have come, I am here

πεποιθα—I trust, I am confident

ὄραω—ἔωρακα [λεγω]—εἰρηκα

The Pluperfect is not very frequent, even in Classical Greek, but it does occur a few times in the New Testament. It is a past tense like the Aorist and Imperfect, therefore has an Augment as well as reduplication, though there are some examples in the New Testament where the Augment is omitted. The characteristic letters are κει.

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>
1st person	ἔ-λε-λυ-κειν—I had loosed		ἔ-λε-λυ-κειμεν—we had loosed
2nd person	ἔ-λε-λυ-κεις etc.		ἔ-λε-λυ-κειτε etc.
3rd person	ἔ-λε-λυ-κει		ἔ-λε-λυ-κεισαν [ἔλελυκεσαν]

(Note: The Pluperfect is NEVER used as though it were a simple past tense, as is done in some Indian languages.)

EXERCISE XIVa

1. λέγει αὐτῷ ὁ Ἰησοῦς, ὅτι ἔωρακας με, πεπιστευκας μακαριοι οἱ μὴ ἰδοντες και πιστευσαντες.
2. ὅτε δε γεγωνα ἀνηρ, κατηγορηκα τα του νηπιου.
3. Ἰουδαιους οὐκ ἠδίκηκα, ὡς συ καλως γινωσκεις.
4. πειρασμος ὑμας οὐκ εἴληφεν, εἰ μὴ ἀνθρωπινος.
5. ὁ γαρ θεος εἶρηκε δια στοματος των προφητων.
6. Ἐλληνας εἰσηγαγεν εἰς το ἱερον και κεκοινωκεν τον ἅγιον τοπον.
7. και ἀπελθουσα εἰς τον οἶκον εἶδεν το δαιμονιον ἐξεληλυθος ἐκ του παιδιου.
8. ἤγγικεν ἡ βασιλεια του θεου.
9. ὁ γεγραφα, γεγραφα.
10. κυριε, ἐν σοι πεποιθαμεν.

EXERCISE XIVb

1. I have learned the words well.
2. Now that you have become a man, you ought to teach others.
3. The Lord has spoken evil about you.
4. I have told you the words of truth, but you have not believed.
5. What we have seen and heard we declare to you.

6. The evil spirit has seized the boy.
7. You have filled Jerusalem with your teaching.
8. The teacher has come and the students must listen to him.

κατ ἀργεω—do away with, cancel

ἀδικεω—injure

κοινοω—make common, defile

ὅ—what (relative; Lesson XXIV)

πληροω—fill

Ιερουσαλημ, ἡ (indeclinable)—Jerusalem

διδαχη—teaching

νηπιος—child, infant

πειρασμος—testing

ἀνθρωπινος—on a human scale

εἰ μὴ—if not, except

τοπος—place

ὡς—as

καλως—well

LESSON XIV

THE VERB—MIDDLE VOICE

In English, verbs have two voices, Active and Passive, e.g. the boy leads the dog—the dog is led by the boy. In the former the subject does an action, in the latter the subject has something done to it. Greek has another voice called the MIDDLE VOICE, in which the subject both acts and is acted upon, i.e. the subject acts directly or indirectly upon itself. This happens in various ways:

1. *Reflexive*

ἐνδύω—I put on (someone else)

ἐνδύομαι—I put on (myself)

λουώ—I wash (someone else)

λουομαι—I wash (myself)

2. *Indirect Reflexive*—I do something for my own interest

μεταπεμπω—I send A after B

μεταπεμπομαι—I send A to bring B—I summon B

3. *Intransitive*

πανω—I stop (someone else)

πανομαι—I stop (myself), I cease

4. *Causative*—I get something done for myself (this is rare in N.T.)

5. *Reciprocal*

ἀσπάζονται—They greet one another

διαλέγονται—They talk to one another, discuss

In some words the Middle has developed into almost a different meaning, e.g.

καταλαμβάνω—I seize

καταλαμβάνομαι—I seize with the mind, I comprehend

πειθω—I persuade

πειθομαι—I submit to persuasion, I obey

ἀποδιδωμι—I give away

ἀποδιδομαι—I give away for myself, I sell

There are some verbs which have only the Middle or Passive Voice in use, and these are called **DEPONENT VERBS**, since they are thought of as having “put aside” (from Latin—depono, I put aside) the Active. The most common are:

γινομαι—I become

βουλομαι—I wish

ἔρχομαι—I come

ἅπτομαι—I touch (followed by genitive)

εὐ | ἀγγελιζομαι—I preach the gospel

δεομαι—I beseech

δεχομαι—I receive

ἀρχομαι—I begin

ἀπο | κρινομαι—I answer

ἐργαζομαι—I work

πορευομαι—I go, travel

δυναμαι—I am able, I can

(Note: δυναμαι has -α- in all the endings in place of -ο- or -ε- and it is followed by a verb in the infinitive.)

δεομαι, πορευομαι, δυναμαι have Passive form of Aorist stem. ἀποκρινομαι has both Middle and Passive forms.

μαχομαι—I fight

ὀργιζομαι—I am angry

The Middle endings are:

<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect and 2nd Aorist</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>1st Aorist</i>
λυ-ομαι	ἐ-λυ-ομην	λυ-σ-ομαι	ἐ-λυ-σ-αμην
λυ-ει, λυ-η	ἐ-λυ-ου	λυ-σ-ει, λυση	ἐ-λυ-σ-ω
λυ-εται	ἐ-λυ-ετο	λυ-σ-εται	ἐ-λυ-σ-ατο
λυ-ομεθα	ἐ-λυ-ομεθα	λυ-σ-ομεθα	ἐ-λυ-σ-αμεθα
λυ-εσθε	ἐ-λυ-εσθε	λυ-σ-εσθε	ἐ-λυ-σ-ασθε
λυ-ονται	ἐ-λυ-οντο	λυ-σ-ονται	ἐ-λυ-σ-αντο

Verbs which have Second Aorists in the Active also have Second Aorists in the Middle, and they are formed from the same stem as the Active:

λαμβάνω—ἔλαβον—ἔλαβομην
 λείπω—ἔλιπον—ἔλιπομην
 βάλλω—ἔβαλον—ἔβαλομην

Also γινομαι has Second Aorist, ἐγενομην.

Infinitives

Present	λυ-εσθαι	Future	λυ-σ-εσθαι
1st Aorist	λυ-σ-ασθαι	2nd Aorist	λαβ-εσθαι

Participles (declined like κακος)

Present	λυ-ομενος	Future	λυ-σ-ομενος
1st Aorist	λυ-σ-αμενος	2nd Aorist	λαβ-ομενος

EXERCISE XVa

δεκα μὲν ἔτη ἔμαχοντο περὶ τὴν Τροίαν οἱ Ἕλληνες, καὶ ὁ Ἀγαμέμνων καὶ ὁ Ἀχιλλεύς, ὄντες ἡγεμόνες τῶν Ἑλλήνων, διεφεροντο ἀλλήλοις περὶ παρθενῶν. ὅπως δὲ τοῦτο ἐγενετο, εὐθὺς ἀκουσεσθε. Χρῆσις, ὁ τοῦ Ἀπολλωνοῦ ἱερεὺς, ἐβούλετο ἀνακομιζέσθαι (to get back) τὴν παρθενὸν αὐτοῦ ἣν (whom) ἔλαβε ὁ Ἀγαμέμνων, ἀλλὰ ὁ Ἀγαμέμνων οὐκ ἔδεξατο τὰ δῶρα αὐτοῦ καὶ εἶπεν, ἡμεῖς Ἕλληνες οὐ ματὴν μαχομεθα. εἰ κορὴν φερομεθα, οὐκ ἀποπεμπομεθα. οὕτως ὠργίζετο ὁ Ἀπόλλων τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ὥστε νυκτὸς ἐρχόμενος πολλοὺς διειργασατο (destroyed). ὁ δὲ Καλχῆς ὁ προφήτης εἶπε, σὺ, ὦ Ἀγαμέμνων, οὐκ ἔδεξω τὰ δῶρα, οὐδὲ ἔλυσας τὴν τοῦ ἱερεὸς θυγατέρα. εἰ ἀποπεμφεῖ αὐτήν, πάντα καλῶς ἔσται. ὁ οὖν Ἀγαμέμνων ἀπεκρίνατο, τὴν παρθενὸν ἀποπεμπομαι καὶ τὴν Βρισηίδα τὴν τοῦ Ἀχιλλεὺς κορὴν, λημφομαι. οὕτως, κατὰ τὸν Ὅμηρον, ἤρξατο ἡ τοῦ Ἀχιλλεὺς μῆνις (wrath).

Ἑλλην—Greek	δωρον—gift
ματην—in vain	ὑπακουω—obey (+ dative)
εὐθυσ—immediately	διαφερομαι—differ
ἀλλήλους—one another	ὅπως—how
λημφομαι is future of λαμβανω, in active sense	
νυκτος—by night (the genitive case is used to express “ time during which ” something happens)	

EXERCISE XVb

When the apostles began to preach the Gospel to the Greeks, they received it with joy. Paul went to Athens and spoke to the wise men in the Areopagus. Then he went to Corinth and worked with Aquila. The city of Corinth was wicked but many (πολλοι) of the Corinthians believed. Paul was able to persuade them to follow the Lord, and they were obeying his words. They put on themselves the spirit of righteousness, and baptized themselves in the name of the Lord.

(Look up the Proper Names for this piece in the Book of Acts.)

LESSON XV

THE VERB—PASSIVE VOICE

In the Active Voice the subject *does something* to someone, he acts.

In the Passive Voice the subject *has something done* to him *by* someone else, *with* something, e.g.

Active—The man strikes the dog.

Passive—The dog is struck *by* the man *with* a stick.

The person *by whom* the act is done is called the AGENT, and is expressed in Greek by *ὑπο* followed by a Genitive case.

The thing *with which* the act is done is called the INSTRUMENT, and is expressed in Greek by the Dative case, sometimes with *ἐν*.

(Note: THE AGENT MUST BE *LIVING* AND IS PRECEDED BY *ὑπο*.)

The forms of the Passive Tenses are as follows:

Present and Imperfect. These are exactly like the Present and Imperfect Middle, so you do not have anything new to learn.

Future. This must be carefully watched. It is not formed from the Present, like other Futures, but from the Aorist Passive. If the Aorist Passive is a First Aorist, then the Future is a First Future, and if the Aorist is Second, then the Future is Second. In either case it is formed by dropping the Augment, and the final *ν* of the Aorist and adding *-σομαι*. The endings are then the same as the Future Middle.

Aorist. This has endings which are more like Active endings. The characteristic letters of the First Aorist are -θη-.

<i>1st Aorist</i>		<i>Future</i>	
ἐ-λυ-θην	ἐ-λυ-θημεν	λυ-θη-σομαι	λυ-θη-σομεθα
ἐ-λυ-θης	ἐ-λυ-θητε	λυ-θη-σει [η]	λυ-θη-σεσθε
ἐ-λυ-θη	ἐ-λυ-θησαν	λυ-θη-σεται	λυ-θη-σονται

If the last letter of the stem is a consonant, it is modified before θ as follows:

π, πτ, β	become φ
κ, γ, χ, ξ, σσ	become χ
θ, ζ	become σ
ν	disappears

but these should all be checked with the list of verbs, as some are irregular.

Second Aorist. A few verbs have Second Aorist, which omits -θ- but otherwise is the same as First Aorist. The most common are:

ἀγγελῶ—ἠγγελην	-στελλῶ—εσταλην
γραφῶ—ἐγραφην	κρυπτῶ—ἐκρυβην
σπειρῶ—ἐσπαρην	φθειρῶ—ἐφθαρην
στρεφῶ (turn)—ἐστραφην	

Perfect and Pluperfect. These have the same endings in both Middle and Passive. They have reduplication, as in the Active, and the Pluperfect has the Augment.

<i>Perfect</i>		<i>Pluperfect</i>	
λε-λυ-μαι	λε-λυ-μεθα	ἐ-λε-λυ-μην	ἐ-λε-λυ-μεθα
λε-λυ-σαι	λε-λυ-σθε	ἐ-λε-λυ-σο	ἐ-λε-λυ-σθε
λε-λυ-ται	λε-λυ-νται	ἐ-λε-λυ-το	ἐ-λε-λυ-ντο

Participles. All Middle and Passive Participles, except Aorist Passive, end in *-μενος* and are declined like *ἀγαθος*.

<i>Present, Middle and Passive</i>	<i>λυομενος</i>
<i>1st Aorist Middle</i>	<i>λυσαμενος</i>
<i>Future Passive</i>	<i>λυθησομενος</i>
<i>Future Middle</i>	<i>λυσομενος</i>
<i>2nd Aorist Middle</i>	<i>γενομενος</i>
<i>Perfect, Middle and Passive</i>	<i>λελυμενος</i>

The Aorist Participle Passive is declined as follows:

	<i>Singular</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom. Voc.	<i>λυθεις</i>	<i>λυθεισα</i>	<i>λυθεν</i>
Acc.	<i>λυθεντα</i>	<i>λυθεισαν</i>	<i>λυθεν</i>
Gen.	<i>λυθεντος</i>	<i>λυθεισης</i>	<i>λυθεντος</i>
Dat.	<i>λυθεντι</i>	<i>λυθειση</i>	<i>λυθεντι</i>

	<i>Plural</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.⁴¹</i>
Nom. Voc.	<i>λυθεντες</i>	<i>λυθεισαι</i>	<i>λυθεντα</i>
Acc.	<i>λυθεντας</i>	<i>λυθεισας</i>	<i>λυθεντα</i>
Gen.	<i>λυθεντων</i>	<i>λυθεισων</i>	<i>λυθεντων</i>
Dat.	<i>λυθεισι</i>	<i>λυθεισαις</i>	<i>λυθεισι</i>

Infinitives

<i>Present</i>	<i>λυεσθαι</i>
<i>1st Aorist Middle</i>	<i>λυσασθαι</i>
<i>Future Passive</i>	<i>λυθησεσθαι</i>
<i>1st Aorist Passive</i>	<i>λυθηραι</i>
<i>Future Middle</i>	<i>λυσεσθαι</i>
<i>2nd Aorist Middle</i>	<i>γενεσθαι</i>
<i>Perfect</i>	<i>λελυσθαι</i>
<i>2nd Aorist Passive</i>	<i>σπαρηραι</i>

Note:

Principal parts of verbs

You have now learned all the tenses of the regular verb, though there are some additional moods to follow. At the end of the book you will find a chart setting out all the moods and tenses of the verb *λυω*. This verb, and one or two others, are perfectly regular in the formation of tenses, but the vast majority of Greek verbs form one or other of their tenses in an irregular way. This is regrettable, but cannot now be rectified for the benefit of unfortunate modern students. In order to make it a little easier to identify the various parts of the verb there is a conventional way of listing the "Principal Parts", which are given as Present Active, Future Active, Aorist Active, Perfect Active, Perfect Passive and Aorist Passive. A list of the main verbs you are likely to need in reading the New Testament is given at the end of the book (pp. 140-4) and you should eventually learn the whole list by heart. This is not so difficult as it may appear, if it is taken piecemeal, say five a day.

From this point it will be assumed that you will look up the verbs which occur in the exercises in order to check the tenses. It would be a good idea to glance through the list now and note a few of the commoner verbs which you have already learnt. In particular, note carefully the last section, which contains a number of defective verbs, in which the tenses are made up of parts from verbs with different stems. These are mostly very common verbs, and a few minutes spent in looking at them now will save a lot of time hunting for them later.

EXERCISE XVIa

ἦν δε ποτε ἀνηρ ὃς ἐπεμφθη ὑπο του βασιλεως εἰς πολιν

ἑτέραν και παρα την ὁδον πορευομενος ἔληφθη ὑπο ληστων. ὁ ἄνηρ ὀργισθεις εἶπεν, ἐγὼ εἰμι ὁ του βασιλεως ἄγγελος και ὑμεῖς ὑπο του βασιλεως διωχθησεσθε και τιμωρηθησεσθε. οἱ λησται ἀκουσαντες τουτο ἐφοβηθησαν και διαλεγεσθαι ἤρξαντο ἀλλήλοις. ὁ μὲν εἶπεν, ὁ βασιλευς ἔλθων λημφεται ἡμας και βληθησομεθα εἰς φυλακην. ὁ δε ἀποκριθεις εἶπεν, λυσομεν τον ἄγγελον και φενξομεθα ὥστε μη ληφθηναι. ὁ δε ἡγεμων εἶπεν, δια τι διαλεγεσθε ἑαυτοις ; ὁ ἄγγελος τεθνηκως οὐ δυνησεται ἀναγγεῖλαι τον λογον τῷ βασιλει και νεκρος κεκρουμμενος οὐχ εὐρεθησεται.

διωκω—pursue

τιμωρεω—punish

φοβεω—terrify

διαλεγομαι—discuss

ἀναγγελλω—report

φυλακη—prison

ὥστε (followed by Infinitive expresses consequence)—so that

EXERCISE XVIIb

When the disciples came together on the fiftieth day, a sound was heard as of a strong wind, and the whole house where they were sitting was filled. And there were seen tongues as of fire, and they were filled with Holy Spirit, and began to speak with other tongues. The words were heard by the people and they were terrified because they saw the miracle. Then Peter answered and said to them, "This (τουτο) has happened by the power of God. Jesus of Nazareth was crucified by you, but was lifted up by God, and in his name the Holy Spirit has come".

come together—συν-ερχομαι

fiftieth—πεντηκοστος, -η, -ον

sound—ἦχος, το

as—ὡσπερ

where—οὗ

crucify—σταυρωω

lift up—ὑψωω

were seen—ὠφθησαν

strong (of wind)—βιαιος

LESSON XVI

THE VERB—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

The Indicative Mood expresses a fact, it *indicates* something.

The Subjunctive Mood expresses a possibility, an uncertainty or an indefinite statement. English sometimes uses "may", "might", "would" but does not always clearly indicate the Subjunctive.

The different tenses of the Subjunctive have NO TIME REFERENCE, but differ according to the KIND OF ACTION, just like the Infinitive or Participle, i.e.

The Present Subjunctive refers to a continuous action.

The Aorist Subjunctive refers to a single action.

There is no Future Subjunctive, and the one most commonly used is the Aorist.

Since the Aorist Subjunctive is not a Historic tense it has no augment. It is formed from the Aorist stem, like the Infinitive. The negative of the Subjunctive is *μη*.

The endings of the Subjunctive are similar to the Indicative but have long vowels, *-ω-* and *-η-*, in place of the short Indicative vowels, *-ο-*, *-ε-* or *-α-*. The First Aorist Subjunctive is like the Present with the addition of *-σ-*, the Second Aorist is like the Present, but is from the Aorist stem. The Aorist Passive has Active endings, like the Indicative. The following are the forms:

<i>Active: Present</i>	<i>1st Aorist</i>	<i>2nd Aorist</i>
<i>λυω</i>	<i>λυσω</i>	<i>βαλω</i>
<i>λυης</i>	<i>λυσης</i>	<i>βαλης</i>
<i>λυη</i>	<i>λυση</i>	<i>βαλη</i>
<i>λυωμεν</i>	<i>λυσωμεν</i>	<i>βαλωμεν</i>
<i>λυητε</i>	<i>λυσητε</i>	<i>βαλητε</i>
<i>λυωσι(ν)</i>	<i>λυσωσι(ν)</i>	<i>βαλωσι(ν)</i>

Middle and Passive

<i>Present</i>	<i>Aorist Middle</i>	<i>Aorist Passive</i>
λυωμαι	λυσωμαι	λυθω
λυη	λυση	λυθης
λυηται	λυσηται	λυθη
λυωμεθα	λυσωμεθα	λυθωμεν
λυησθε	λυσησθε	λυθητε
λυωνται	λυσωνται	λυθωσι (ν)

USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

A. As Main Verb

1. *Hortatory*, in First Person only, to express an exhortation.

Beloved, let us love one another: ἀγαπητοι, αγαπωμεν ἀλληλους.

2. *Deliberative*, to express a question with a doubt in it.
What are we to do? τι ποιησωμεν ;

3. *Prohibition*. Second Person of *Aorist* Subjunctive only.

Do not do this. μη ποιησης τουτο.

4. *Strong Denial*. οὐ μη with the *Aorist* Subjunctive is used to express strong denial of a future event.

He will certainly not escape. οὐ μη καταφυγη.

B. In Subordinate Clauses

1. *Final clause*, expressing purpose, introduced by *ἵνα* or *ὅπως*.

He came in order to ask this. ἦλθεν ἵνα τουτο αιτηση.

2. *Indefinite clause*, introduced by Relative Pronoun or Adverb with $\alpha\upsilon$ which is equivalent to the English suffix “-ever”.

Whoever believes shall be saved. $\delta\varsigma \alpha\upsilon \pi\iota\sigma\tau\epsilon\upsilon\sigma\eta$
 $\sigma\omega\theta\eta\sigma\epsilon\alpha\iota$.

3. *Temporal clauses* referring to the future and introduced by $\acute{\epsilon}\omega\varsigma \alpha\upsilon$, $\acute{\epsilon}\omega\varsigma \omicron\upsilon$ or $\acute{\epsilon}\omega\varsigma \acute{\omicron}\tau\omicron\upsilon$, all of which mean “until”.

I shall remain until he comes. $\mu\epsilon\nu\omega \acute{\epsilon}\omega\varsigma \alpha\upsilon \acute{\epsilon}\lambda\theta\eta$.

4. *Conditional clause* referring to the future, introduced by $\acute{\epsilon}\alpha\nu$ which is a combination of $\epsilon\iota$ and $\alpha\upsilon$ (see Lesson XXVII).

5. After verbs of fearing, introduced by $\mu\eta$ —“lest”.

He feared lest he should be punished. $\acute{\epsilon}\phi\omicron\beta\eta\theta\eta \mu\eta$
 $\tau\iota\mu\omega\rho\eta\theta\eta$.

(Note: $\mu\eta$ here must not be translated as a negative. The sentence in English could equally well be translated “He feared *that* he would be punished”. IN THIS CASE ONLY, the negative of the Subjunctive is $\omicron\upsilon$, which follows $\mu\eta$ used as a conjunction, e.g. He feared that they would not come— $\acute{\epsilon}\phi\omicron\beta\eta\theta\eta \mu\eta \alpha\upsilon\tau\omicron\iota \omicron\upsilon\kappa \acute{\epsilon}\lambda\theta\omega\sigma\iota$.)

You have now learned enough grammar to be able to begin reading some of the easier parts of the New Testament. It is not possible to do this until you understand the Subjunctive, since it occurs very frequently, and you can hardly read half-a-dozen verses before coming across it.

A good place to start is with the First Epistle of John, which has mostly short sentences and is fairly familiar. There will be some words which you do not understand, but you should be able to guess the meaning from a comparison with the English Bible. It is a good idea to get

a modern version, rather than using the somewhat archaic English of the Authorized or Revised, and the best one at present is probably Kingsley Williams, *The New Testament in Plain English*.

The Greek of the New Testament varies quite a lot, and it is best to work through familiar passages first. The Sermon on the Mount is quite simple, and that might be taken after 1 John. Then either a continuation of Matthew, or Mark. The style of Luke and Acts is more classical, and the last part of Acts has a large number of words which do not occur anywhere else in the New Testament. The letters of Paul tend to be very involved in language as well as in thought, but if they are taken slowly they can be sorted out. You can reckon that you know some Greek when you can read and appreciate the Letter to the Hebrews, which contains the most beautiful language in the New Testament. Until you can do that it is better not to look at the book of Revelation, which is very strange Greek indeed, and not the kind to be imitated by a learner.

It is possible, of course, to finish the Grammar first, but it will probably prove more interesting to work through a chapter of the New Testament alternately with the rest of the Lessons. You will meet some words which are unfamiliar, but you can get them by comparison with the English version on your first reading.

EXERCISE XVIIa

ὁ Ἰησοῦς εἶπεν τοῖς μαθηταῖς, πορευομεθα ἀλλαγῶν εἰς τὰς ἕτερας κώμας, ἵνα καὶ ἐκεῖ κηρυξῶ. ὅς ἂν δεχῆται με, δεχεται τὸν πατέρα μου. ὁ γὰρ υἱὸς τοῦ ἀνθρώπου οὐκ ἦλθεν ἵνα κρινῆ τὸν κόσμον, ἀλλ' ἵνα ὁ κόσμος δι' αὐτοῦ σωθῆ. ὁ δὲ κόσμος οὐ μὴ πιστευσῆ εἰς ἐμε ἕως ἂν ἔλθω ἐπὶ τῶν νεφελῶν τοῦ οὐρανοῦ. οἱ δὲ μαθηταὶ ἀποκριθεντες

εἶπον, κυριε, τι ποιησωμεν ; εἰαν οἱ ὄχλοι τους λογους σου μη ἀκουσωσι, πως τους ἡμετερους ἀκουσουσι ; ὁ δε Ἰησους εἶπεν, ὅπου ἂν κηρυξητε το εὐαγγελιον, μη φοβηθητε μη οἱ ἄνθρωποι ἀποκτεινωσιν ὑμας, ἐγω γαρ μεθ' ὑμων εἰμι εἰς τον αἰωνα.

ἀλλαχου—elsewhere

ἀποκτεινω—kill

ὅπου—where

ὄχλος—crowd

κωμη—village

νεφελη—cloud

κηρυσσω—preach.

EXERCISE XVIIb

Paul wrote in his letter, "What shall we do then? Shall we continue in sin, that grace may abound?" But whoever sees the love of God is not able to sin, and whoever sins will never enter the kingdom of heaven. Jesus came in order that we might have life, and in order that we might help one another. Let us keep his commandments until we see him in his glory. Our hope is in him so that we do not fear that he will desert us. Whenever we enter into temptation we can say to him, "Lord, do not turn away from thy people".

abound—περισσευω

temptation—πειρασμος

letter—ἐπιστολη

desert, abandon—καταλειπω

turn away—ἀποστρεφω

whenever—ὅταν

LESSON XVII

CONTRACTED VERBS

We have already met a few verbs which have stems ending in a vowel, *a*, *ε*, or *ο*, and for the most part we have avoided the Present and Imperfect tenses of these verbs. Since the endings of the Present and Imperfect begin with a vowel it means that two vowels come together, and it is a case of love at first sight, resulting in immediate marriage! The technical term for this marriage is "crasis", or "mixing", and the rules are quite simple. Just as in any other marriage there are two possibilities—either one partner is so strong that it dominates the other, or the two partners influence one another and the result is a harmonious combination. We may refer to the stem vowel as the husband since that is usually the dominant partner, but sometimes the wife manages to avoid being completely suppressed and pushes in an unobtrusive iota subscript without her husband realizing it.

The a verbs are most masculine when they meet *ε* or *η*, and here they completely dominate (except for the iota subscript). When they meet *ο* or *ω* they become henpecked!

a with *ε* or *η*—*a*

a with *ει* or *η—α*

a with *ο*, *ου* or *ω—ω*

a with *οι—ω*

The ε verbs are almost entirely under the wife's thumb except when they meet *ε* or *ο*.

ε with *ε—ει*

ε with *ο—ου*

ε with long vowel or diphthong disappears.

The ο verbs are the most masterful and always dominate the ending, but an iota makes them shout *οι*!

ο with short vowel—ου ο with long vowel—ω
 ο with any combination of ι (including subscript)—οι

(Note: The Present Infinitive Active ending -ειν is already a contraction of ε + εν and the stem vowels α and ο are added to this, so that α + ε + ε = α and ο + ε + ε = ου. There is therefore no ι involved.)

From these rules the tenses can easily be worked out as they are tabulated below.

Active

Present Indicative

τιμω	φιλω	δουλω
τιμας	φιλεις	δουλοις
τιμα	φιλει	δουλοι
τιμωμεν	φιλουμεν	δουλουμεν
τιματε	φιλειτε	δουλουτε
τιμωσι(ν)	φιλουσι(ν)	δουλουσι(ν)

Imperfect Indicative

ἐτιμων	ἐφιλον	ἐδουλον
ἐτιμας	ἐφιλεις	ἐδουλους
ἐτιμα	ἐφιλει	ἐδουλου
ἐτιμωμεν	ἐφιλουμεν	ἐδουλουμεν
ἐτιματε	ἐφιλειτε	ἐδουλουτε
ἐτιμων	ἐφιλον	ἐδουλον

Present Subjunctive

τιμω	φιλω	δουλω
τιμας	φιλης	δουλοις
τιμα	φιλη	δουλοι
τιμωμεν	φιλωμεν	δουλωμεν
τιματε	φιλητε	δουλατε
τιμωσι(ν)	φιλωσι(ν)	δουλωσι(ν)

Present Infinitive

τιμαν

φιλειν

δουλουν

Present Participle

τιμων

φιλων

δουλων

τιμωσα

φιλουσα

δουλουσα

τιμων

φιλουν

δουλουν

Middle and Passive

Present Indicative

τιμωμαι

φιλουμαι

δουλουμαι

τιμα

φιλει, φιλη

δουλοι

τιμαται

φιλειται

δουλουται

τιμωμεθα

φιλουμεθα

δουλουμεθα

τιμασθε

φιλεισθε

δουλουσθε

τιμωνται

φιλουνται

δουλουνται

Imperfect Indicative

ἐτιμωμην

ἐφιλουμην

ἐδουλουμην

ἐτιμω

ἐφιλου

ἐδουλου

ἐτιματο

ἐφιλειτο

ἐδουλουτο

ἐτιμωμεθα

ἐφιλουμεθα

ἐδουλουμεθα

ἐτιμασθε

ἐφιλεισθε

ἐδουλουσθε

ἐτιμωντο

ἐφιλοντο

ἐδουλοντο

Present Subjunctive

τιμωμαι

φιλωμαι

δουλωμαι

τιμα

φιλη

δουλοι

τιμαται

φιληται

δουλωται

τιμωμεθα

φιλωμεθα

δουλωμεθα

τιμασθε

φιλησθε

δουλωσθε

τιμωνται

φιλωνται

δουλωνται

Present Infinitive

τιμασθαι

φιλεισθαι

δουλουσθαι

Present Participle

τιμωμενος

φιλουμενος

δουλουμενος

τιμωμενη

φιλουμενη

δουλουμενη

τιμωμενον

φιλουμενον

δουλουμενον

EXERCISE XVIIIa

ἐν τῷ κόσμῳ δηλον ἔστιν ὅτι εἰ τις (anyone) βόα, τιμαται· ἀλλ' εἰ τις ταπεινεται ἢ δοξα αὐτοῦ οὐ φανεροῦται. ἰατρος τις τοὺς πτωχοὺς θεραπεύει καὶ ἰαται, ἀλλ' οὐδεὶς φιλεῖ αὐτόν. εἰ δὲ ζητεῖ τὴν δοξάν των ἀνθρώπων καὶ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σοφίαν ὕψοι, πάντες (all) τιμῶσιν αὐτόν καὶ ὁ οἶκος αὐτοῦ πεπληρωμένος ἐστί. οὐ θεωρεῖτε ὅτι οἱ πολλοὺς (many) λόγους λαλοῦντες σοφοὶ ἐπικαλοῦνται; ἀγαλλιωμεθα οὖν καὶ χάρας πληρωμεθα ὅτι ἐν τοῖς οὐρανοῖς οἱ ταπεινωθέντες ὑψώθησονται, καὶ οἱ ἑαυτοὺς ὑψώσαντες ταπεινωθησονται. ὁ ἀνθρώπος οὐ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σοφίαν δικαιούται ἀλλὰ τὴν τοῦ Θεοῦ ἀγάπην. τὸ εὐαγγέλιον μαρτυρεῖ ὅτι ὁ Ἰησοῦς ἐσταυρώθη ἵνα οἱ ἀνθρώποι δικαιωθῶσι, καὶ ἵνα ἐν τῇ ἔσχατῇ ἡμέρᾳ σωσῇ τοὺς ἀγαπῶντας αὐτόν.

EXERCISE XVIIIb

Jesus said, "If you love me you will keep my commandments." But if we look at the world we see that men do not do this. They desire salvation, but they are not willing to humble themselves. They are filled with wickedness and worship idols (*εἰδῶλα*). Let us ask, "Who (*τις*;) is justified by his works?" The Scriptures witness that no one is righteous. Man must be silent when God speaks in order to manifest his truth. When he is born into the world he allows sin to take hold of him, and he loves his

own glory, and exalts himself. Let us ask God to heal our sin and to manifest his glory in us, that we may rejoice greatly in the day of the Lord.

βοαω—shout
 τιμαω—honour
 αγαπαω—love
 σιωπαω—be silent
 εαω—allow
 ιαομαι—heal
 αγαλλιαομαι—rejoice
 greatly
 γενναομαι—be born
 πτωχος—poor
 οραω—see
 φιλεω—love
 ζητεω—seek
 θεωρεω—look at
 λαλεω—speak
 επικαλεω—surname

τηρεω—watch, keep
 επιθυμew—desire (+ genit.)
 μαρτυρεω—witness
 αιτεω—ask
 τις ; (question)—who?
 ταπεινω—humble
 φανερω—manifest
 υψω—lift up, exalt
 πληρω—fill
 δικαιωω—justify
 σταυρωω—crucify
 ουδεις—no one
 λατρευω—worship
 τις (statement)—someone,
 any one

LESSON XVIII

THE -μι VERBS

Most of the verbs in the New Testament are of the form you have already learnt, ending in -ω, but these are not quite the only verbs, nor are they of the oldest type. Originally the verb was probably formed from two sounds, one indicating an action, and the other indicating the person acting. The earliest ending was probably the personal pronoun in the forms -μαι (me), -σαι (you), -ται (that), which we find surviving in the passive, but these were also modified to -μι, -σι, -τι, in order to provide a separate form for the active. Later more endings were used to differentiate different shades of meaning, and these early endings tended to drop out, so that the later the Greek, the less common they become. There are, however, three verbs in the New Testament which have retained them, and a few others which have some fragments.

All these words except εἰμι (I am) are transitive, and have very fundamental meanings—I put, give, set or stand—so that although they are few they occur very frequently. The three chief are:

τιθημι—	prevailing vowel ε—	stem θε—	I place
διδωμι—	„	ο—	„ δο—I give
ιστημι—	„	α—	„ στα—I make to stand

In the Present stem there is Reduplication with the modifications of θ to τ in τιθημι and σ to a rough breathing in ιστημι, and also the singular has a lengthened stem vowel.

Since these three are very similar, apart from the stem vowels, it is convenient to look at them side by side, in

the different tenses. Tenses enclosed in brackets are not found in the New Testament.

Present Indicative Active

τιθημι	διδωμι	ιστημι
τιθης	διδως	ιστης
τιθησι(ν)	διδωσι(ν)	ιστησι(ν)
τιθεμεν	διδομεν	ισταμεν
τιθετε	διδοτε	ιστατε
τιθεασι(ν)	διδοασι(ν)	ιστασι(ν)

(Note: The third person plural of *τιθημι* and *διδωμι* is never contracted.)

Imperfect Indicative Active

ἔτιθην	ἔδιδουν	[ἴστην]
ἔτιθεις	ἔδιδους	[ἴστης]
ἔτιθει	ἔδιδου	[ἴστη]
ἔτιθεμεν	ἔδιδομεν	[ἴσταμεν]
ἔτιθετε	ἔδιδοτε	[ἴστατε]
ἔτιθεσαν, ἔτιθον	ἔδιδοσαν, ἔδιδον	[ἴστασαν]

Present and Imperfect Indicative Middle and Passive

τιθεμαι	[ἔτιθεμην]	διδομαι	ἔδιδομην
τιθεσαι	[ἔτιθεσο]	διδοσαι	ἔδιδοσο
τιθεται	[ἔτιθετο]	διδοται	ἔδιδοτο
τιθεμεθα	[ἔτιθεμεθα]	διδομεθα	ἔδιδομεθα
τιθεσθε	[ἔτιθεσθε]	διδοσθε	ἔδιδοσθε
τιθενται	[ἔτιθεντο]	διδονται	ἔδιδοντο
	ισταμαι	[ἴσταμην]	
	ιστασαι	[ἴστασο]	
	ισταται	[ἴστατο]	
	ισταμεθα	[ἴσταμεθα]	
	ιστασθε	[ἴστασθε]	
	ιστανται	[ἴσταντο]	

*Infinitives and Participles**Active*

τιθεναι	τιθειεις	διδοναι	διδουεις	ισταναι	ιστας
	τιθεισα		διδουσα		ιστασα
	τιθεν		διδον		ισταν

Middle and Passive

τιθεσθαι	τιθεμενος	διδοσθαι	διδομενος	ιστασθαι	ισταμενος
	τιθεμενη		διδομενη		ισταμενη
	τιθεμενον		διδομενον		ισταμενον

Aorist Indicative Active

(Note: κ in place of the usual σ.)

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
ἔθηκα	ἔθηκαμεν	ἔδωκα	ἔδωκαμεν
ἔθηκας	ἔθηκατε	ἔδωκας	ἔδωκατε
ἔθηκε	ἔθηκαν	ἔδωκε	ἔδωκαν

ιστημι has two Aorists, which differ in meaning, the First Aorist being Transitive and meaning "I caused to stand", and the Second Aorist being Intransitive and meaning "I stood". The First Aorist is quite regular in form, the Second has forms like the Aorist Passive.

<i>1st Aorist</i>	<i>2nd Aorist</i>
ἔστησα	ἔστην
ἔστησας	ἔστης
ἔστησε	ἔστη
ἔστησαμεν	ἔστημεν
ἔστησατε	ἔστητε
ἔστησαν	ἔστησαν

(Note: The third person plural is the same in each form, and its meaning must be inferred from the context. It causes

no confusion, since if it has an object it is First Aorist and if not, it is Second.)

Aorist Indicative Middle (Second Aorist)

ἔθεμην	ἔθεμεθα	ἔδομην	ἔδομεθα
ἔθου	ἔθεσθε	ἔδου	ἔδοσθε
ἔθετο	ἔθεντο	ἔδοτο	ἔδοντο

Aorist Infinitives

<i>Active</i>		1st	2nd
θειναι	δουναι	στησαι	στηναι
<i>Middle</i>			
θεσθαι	δοσθαι		

Aorist Participles

<i>Active</i>			
θεις	δους	στησας	στας
θεισα	δουσα	στησασα	σασα
θεν	δον	στησαν	σταν

Middle

θεμενος-η-ον	δομενος-η-ον
--------------	--------------

Subjunctives

The Present and Aorist Subjunctives of *τιθημι* and *ιστημι* are quite regular. The Present and Aorist Subjunctives Active and Middle (but NOT Passive) of *διδωμι* have *ω* instead of *η* in all parts.

διδω	δω	διδωμαι	δωμαι
διδως	δως	διδω	δω
διδω	δω [δωη]	διδωται	δωται
διδωμεν	δωμεν	διδωμεθα	δωμεθα
διδωτε	δωτε	διδωσθε	δωσθε
διδωσι	δωσι	διδωνται	δωνται

OTHER TENSES are regularly conjugated as follows:

Active

<i>Future</i>	θησω	δωσω	στησω—I shall cause to stand
<i>Perfect</i>	τεθεικα	δεδωκα	*έστηκα —I stand

Middle

<i>Future</i>	θησομαι	δωσομαι	στησομαι —I shall stand
---------------	---------	---------	----------------------------

M. and P.

<i>Perfect</i>	τεθειμαι	δεδομαι
----------------	----------	---------

Passive

<i>Future</i>	τεθησομαι	δοθησομαι	σταθησομαι—I shall stand
<i>Aorist</i>	έτεθην	έδοθην	έσταθην—I stood

(Note the meanings of the tenses of *ίστημι* as given on the right. The Present, Imperfect, Future and First Aorist Active are all Transitive; the rest are Intransitive.

* Perfect Infinitive is *έσταναι* and there are two forms of Participle—*έστως*, *έστωσα*, *έστος* and *έστηκως*, *έστηκνια*, *έστηκος*.)

OTHER VERBS IN -μι (FRAGMENTS)

φημι (I say), has Pres. Indic. Act.—*φημι φης φησι*
φαμεν φατε φασι
and Imperf. Indic. Act. 3rd sing.—*έφη* 3rd plur.—*έφησαν*
άφημι (forgive)

The root of *ίημι* is *έ*, but the simple verb is not found in the New Testament, and many parts are assimilated to -ω verbs. The following must be noted:

<i>Pres. Indic. Act.</i>	3rd sing. Imperf. Indic. Act.— <i>ἤφιε</i>
<i>ἀφιημι</i>	Pres. Infin. Act.— <i>ἀφιεναι</i>
<i>ἀφίης, ἀφεις</i>	3rd plur. Pres. Indic. Pass.— <i>ἀφιενται</i>
<i>ἀφιησι</i>	„ „ Perf. „ „ — <i>ἀφρωνται</i>
<i>ἀφιμεν, ἀφιομεν</i>	2nd Aor. Subj. Act.— <i>ἀφω, ἀφίης, ἀφη</i> <i>ἀφωμεν, ἀφητε, ἀφωσι</i>
<i>ἀφιετε</i>	„ „ Part. Act.— <i>ἀφεις, ἀφεισα, ἀφεν</i>
<i>ἀφιασι, ἀφιοσυσι</i>	„ „ Imper. „ 2nd sing.— <i>ἀφες</i>
	„ „ „ „ „ plur.— <i>ἀφετε</i>
<i>Fut. Indic. Act.—ἀφησω</i>	1st Aor. Indic. Act.— <i>ἀφηκα</i>
„ „ Pass.— <i>ἀφεθησομαι</i>	„ „ „ Pass.— <i>ἀφεθην</i>

συν-ιημι (I understand) has the following forms:

Pres. Indic. Act. 2nd plur.— <i>συνιετε</i>
„ „ „ 3rd plur.— <i>συνιασι</i>
Fut. Indic. Act. 3rd plur.— <i>συνησουσι</i>
1st Aor. Indic. Act. 2nd plur.— <i>συνηκατε</i>
„ „ „ „ 3rd plur.— <i>συνηκαν</i>
Pres. Imper. Act. 3rd sing.— <i>συνιτω</i>
2nd Aor. Imper. Act. 2nd plur.— <i>συνετε</i>
Pres. Infin. Act.— <i>συνιεναι</i>
„ Part. „ — <i>συνιων</i> and <i>συνιεις</i> (genitive— <i>συνιεντος</i>)
2nd Aor. Subj. Act. 2nd plur.— <i>συνητε</i>
„ „ „ „ 3rd plur.— <i>συνωσι</i>

THE DEFECTIVE VERB *οἶδα*

This is a Perfect tense used as a Present. It comes from the very old Sanskrit root *vid-* which is connected with the Latin “vision” and allied words. The Present is not found, but the Aorist is *εἶδον* (I saw) and the Perfect, *οἶδα*, means “I have seen”, therefore I KNOW.

<i>Perfect Indic.</i> (I know)	<i>Pluperf. Indic.</i> (I knew)	<i>Subjunctive</i>	<i>Infinitive</i> ειδεναί
οἶδα	ἤδειν	εἶδω	
οἶδας	ἤδεις	εἶδῃς	<i>Participle</i>
οἶδε	ἤδει	εἶδῃ	εἶδως
οἶδαμεν	ἤδειμεν	εἶδωμεν	εἶδονια
οἶδατε, ἴστε	ἤδειτε	εἶδητε	εἶδος
οἶδασι, ἴσασι	ἤδειςαν, ἤδεσαν	εἶδωσι	

EXERCISE XIXa

οἰκοδεσποτης τις ἐβουλετο ἀπελθειν εἰς ἕτεραν πολιν και στησας τους δουλους ἐνωπιον αὐτου ἐδωκεν αὐτοις ἀργυρια, ἵνα ἐργασωνται ἕως ἂν ἔλθῃ. οἱ δουλοι σταντες ἔλεγον προς ἀλληλους, τι ποιησωμεν ; ὁ μεν εἶπεν, ἀγορασωμεν προβατα, ἵνα τους ἄμνους ἀποδομενοι ἀργυρια λαβωμεν. ὁ δε παραστας εἶπεν, ἐγὼ δε θησω τα ἀργυρια εἰς την τραπέζαν ἵνα μη ἀπολεσω αὐτα. ὁ οἰκοδεσποτης ἔλθων εἶπεν αὐτοις λογον ἀποδουναί. ὁ μεν ἔλαβε πεντε ἀργυρια και παρεθηκε τῷ δεσποτῇ δεκα· ὁ δε δεσποτης εἶπεν, καλως ἐποίησας, καταστησω σε ἀρχοντα του οἴκου. ὁ δε ἔλαβε δυο ἀργυρια και ἀπεδωκε τα δυο, και ὁ δεσποτης ὀργισθεις εἶπεν, οἶδα σε κακον δουλων ὄντα, και παρεδωκε τοις ὑπηρεταις ἵνα εἰς φυλακην βληθῇ.

παριστημι—(intrans.) stand beside, (trans.) set beside	παρατιθημι—set by the side of
παραδιδωμι—hand over	καθιστημι—set over
ἀγοραζω—buy	ἀποδιδωμι—repay; Mid.—sell
ἀπολεσω, aorist subjunctive of ἀπολλω—lose	ἀποδιδωμι λογον—give account
ἐνωπιον—in front of	ἄμνος—lamb
τραπέζα—table used by money-changers, hence the ancient “bank”	τις—indefinite pronoun, here translate “a”
οἰκοδεσποτης—householder	ὑπηρετης—officer

EXERCISE XIXb

The Lord said, " Whosoever has, to him shall be given ". If we wish to receive his grace we ought to give him our love. He has set us in the world so that we may do his work, and if we do his will he will raise us up at the last day. He knows that we are sinners, but he will forgive our sins and set us before his Father as holy. Let us give to him our love that we may know his will and do it. Not as Judas betrayed him to the High Priests, and sold his Master, but as the martyrs laid down their lives for him. Let us take the armour of God that we may stand in the evil day, and not be separated from him.

raise up—*ἀνιστημι*

set before—*παριστημι*

sell—*ἀποδιδωμαι*

separate—*ἀφιστημι*

as—*καθως*

lay down one's life—*τιθημι*
την ψυχην

forgive—*ἀφιημι*

betray—*προδιδωμι*

armour—*πανοπλιον*

high priest—*ἀρχιερευς*

for, on behalf of—*ὑπερ* with
genitive

martyr—*μαρτυς -υρος (m.)*

LESSON XIX

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD

Turn to Matthew viii. 9, and read what the centurion says to his servants. All his words are commands, and they are expressed by the Imperative ("commanding") mood. The centurion uses three different tenses out of the five which you need to learn.

There are two Imperatives in each Voice, Present and Aorist, but the Present has the same form in Middle and Passive, which makes five.

The distinction is the same as that in the Subjunctive, the Present referring to continual or repeated action and the Aorist to simple action, though the New Testament is not always very precise. But it is important to note that the difference is *never* of time; you can only order someone to do something in the future. Also strictly speaking the Imperative has only one person, because an order is always addressed to "you", but Greek also allows (with Indian languages) the possibility of a third person imperative when an indirect order is given. This is one of the few places where English is more logical, and says "let him do this" or "let them do this".

The regular Imperative forms are as shown on pages 94 and 95.

The following irregular Imperatives should be noted:

εἶμι—ἴσθι, ἔστω, ἔστε, ἔστωσαν. οἶδα—ἴσθι, ἴστε. φημι—
φαθι, φατε. εἶδον—ἴδε, ἴδετε. εἶπον—εἶπε, εἶπετε. ἔσχον—
σχες, σχετε. ἴδου is often found as an exclamation, "Look!"

The Second Aorist Passive is in *-ηθι* instead of *-ητι*—*σπαρηθι, σταληθι*.

EXERCISE XXa

*νυν ἐντολας δωσω, ὑμεις αὐτας τηρεετε.
 μαθηται, στητε—καθιζετε.
 πρωτε μαθητα, το βιβλιον δος ἐμοι—λαβε.
 δευτερε μαθητα, το ὄνομα σου γραφον.
 τριτε μαθητα, την χειρα σου ὑψωσον—ἐπι της τραπεζης θες.
 τεταρτε και πεμπτε μαθηται, ἐξελθετε ἀπο του οἴκου.
 ἕκτε μαθητα, ἀναγαγε αὐτους εἰς τον οἶκον.
 ἑβδομε μαθητα, εἶπε αὐτοις καθισαι.
 ὄγδοε μαθητα, του προσωπου σου ἄπτου.
 ἔνατε μαθητα, μη καθιζε, στηθι.
 δεκατε μαθητα, εἶπε αὐτω καθισαι.*

Note: This exercise not only gives practice in the Imperative, but also gives the first ten *Ordinal* numerals in the Vocative Case. Ordinal numerals give the order in which something comes, i.e. first, second, third, etc., and they are declined like the first and second declension adjectives. *δευτερος* has *ρ*, as the last letter of the stem and so the feminine is in *-α*; all the rest have feminine in *-η*.

The last but one sentence is a negative command, or prohibition. When the prohibition is to stop doing something already begun the construction used is *μη* with the Present Imperative, as here. When the prohibition is against doing something not already begun the construction is *μη* with the Aorist Subjunctive.

E.g. Stop saying—*μη λεγε*.

Do not say (when it is not already begun)—*μη ειπηης*.

	ACTIVE Pres. & 2nd Aor.			1st Aor.	M. & P. Pres. & 2nd Aor.	MIDDLE 1st Aor.	PASSIVE 1st Aor.
λυω	S	2	λυε	λυσον	λυου	λυσαι	λυθητι
		3	λυετω	λυσατω	λυεσθω	λυσασθω	λυθητω
	P	2	λυετε	λυσατε	λυεσθε	λυσασθε	λυθητε
		3	λυετωσαν	λυσατωσαν	λυεσθωσαν	λυσασθωσαν	λυθητωσαν
τιμαω	S	2	τιμα	τιμησον	τιμω	τιμησαι	τιμηθητι
		3	τιματω	τιμησατω	τιμασθω	τιμησασθω	τιμηθητω
	P	2	τιματε	τιμησατε	τιμασθε	τιμησασθε	τιμηθητε
		3	τιματωσαν	τιμησατωσαν	τιμασθωσαν	τιμησασθωσαν	τιμηθητωσαν
φιλεω	S	2	φιλει	φιλησον	φιλου	φιλησαι	φιληθητι
		3	φιλειτω	φιλησατω	φιλεισθω	φιλησασθω	φιληθητω
	P	2	φιλειτε	φιλησατε	φιλεισθε	φιλησασθε	φιληθητε
		3	φιλειτωσαν	φιλησατωσαν	φιλεισθωσαν	φιλησασθωσαν	φιληθητωσαν
δουλωω	S	2	δουλου	δουλωσον	δουλου	δουλωσαι	δουλωθητι
		3	δουλουτω	δουλωσατω	δουλουσθω	δουλωσασθω	δουλωθητω
	P	2	δουλουτε	δουλωσατε	δουλουσθε	δουλωσασθε	δουλωθητε
		3	δουλουτωσαν	δουλωσατωσαν	δουλουσθωσαν	δουλωσασθωσαν	δουλωθητωσαν

τιθημι	S	2	τιθει	2nd Aor. θες θετω	τιθου τιθεςθω	2nd Aor. θου θεςθω	τεθητι τεθητω
		3	τιθετω				
	P	2	τιθετε	θετε	τιθεςθε	θεςθε	τεθητε
		3	τιθετωσαν	θετωσαν	τιθεςθωσαν	θεςθωσαν	τεθητωσαν
διδωμι	S	2	διδου	δος δοτω	διδουσο διδουσθω	δου δουσθω	δοθητι δοθητω
		3	διδοτω				
	P	2	διδετε	δοτε	διδουσθε	δουσθε	δοθητε
		3	διδοτωσαν	δοτωσαν	διδουσθωσαν	δουσθωσαν	δοθητωσαν
ιστημι	S	2	ιστη	1st Aor. Act. στησον στησατω	2nd Aor. Act. στηθι στητω		σταθητι σταθητω
		3	ιστατω				
	P	2	ιστατε	στησατε	στητε		σταθητε
		3	ιστατωσαν	στησατωσαν	στητωσαν		σταθητωσαν

Note: Present Imperative of *ιστημι* is not actually found in N.T.

EXERCISE XXb

Rules for Students

Get up early in the morning.

Wash yourselves with water.

Do not stay in bed for a long time.

Listen to the teacher and do not go to sleep in the class.

Write down the wise words of the teacher.

Answer the questions of the teacher quickly.

Read the books, and keep their words in your heart.

Do not cease to pray.

Notes:

1. early in the morning—*πρωϊ*.
2. wash—*λουω* (see Lesson XIV).
3. bed—*κλινη*. for a long time—*μακρον χρονον* (Accusative of duration).
4. go to sleep—*κοιμασμαι* (Passive—use Aorist Subjunctive). class—*σχολη* from which we get “school”.
6. quickly—*ταχεως* (see Lesson XXI). question—*ερωτημα, -ατος, το*.
8. cease—(see Lesson XIV).

A very good example of the difference between the Present and Aorist Imperatives is seen in the two versions of the Lord's Prayer in Matthew vi. 11, where “give us this day” refers to a single action, and Luke xi. 3 where “give us day by day” refers to a repeated action. In the first case the Imperative is Aorist, and in the second it is Present.

LESSON XX

ADJECTIVES

You have had a number of adjectives already, all of which had the same type of endings, with masculine and neuter of the second declension, and feminine of the first. There are a few more types in Greek, but only the following need be noted specially:

Type 1. Some words have only two terminations, the masculine and feminine being identical, e.g. *αἰώνιος* and words beginning with *α*-privative, e.g. *ἀδυνατος*, *ἄθεος*, *ἄθεσμος*.

Type 2. The two following are irregular in masculine and neuter nominative singular:

μεγας—great

Singular

Nom. Voc.	<i>μεγας</i>	<i>μεγαλη</i>	<i>μεγα</i>
Acc.	<i>μεγαν</i>	<i>μεγαλην</i>	<i>μεγα</i>
Gen.	<i>μεγαλου</i>	<i>μεγαλης</i>	<i>μεγαλου</i>
Dat.	<i>μεγαλω</i>	<i>μεγαλη</i>	<i>μεγαλω</i>

Plural

Nom. Voc.	<i>μεγαλοι</i>	<i>μεγαλαι</i>	<i>μεγαλα</i>
Acc.	<i>μεγαλους</i>	<i>μεγαλας</i>	<i>μεγαλα</i>
Gen.	<i>μεγαλων</i>	<i>μεγαλων</i>	<i>μεγαλων</i>
Dat.	<i>μεγαλοις</i>	<i>μεγαλαις</i>	<i>μεγαλοις</i>

πολvs—much (plural—many)

Singular

Nom. Voc.	<i>πολvs</i>	<i>πολλη</i>	<i>πολv</i>
Acc.	<i>πολvν</i>	<i>πολλην</i>	<i>πολv</i>
Gen.	<i>πολλov</i>	<i>πολλης</i>	<i>πολλov</i>
Dat.	<i>πολλw</i>	<i>πολλη</i>	<i>πολλw</i>

Plural

Nom. Voc.	<i>πολλοι</i>	<i>πολλαι</i>	<i>πολλα</i>
Acc.	<i>πολλovς</i>	<i>πολλας</i>	<i>πολλα</i>
Gen.	<i>πολλων</i>	<i>πολλων</i>	<i>πολλων</i>
Dat.	<i>πολλοις</i>	<i>πολλαις</i>	<i>πολλοις</i>

Type 3. Two termination adjectives with third declension consonant endings:

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
	M.F.	N.	M.F.	N.
Nom.	<i>ἀφρων</i> (foolish)	<i>ἀφρον</i>	<i>ἀφρονες</i>	<i>ἀφρονα</i>
Voc.	<i>ἀφρον</i>	<i>ἀφρον</i>	<i>ἀφρονες</i>	<i>ἀφρονα</i>
Acc.	<i>ἀφρονα</i>	<i>ἀφρον</i>	<i>ἀφρονας</i>	<i>ἀφρονα</i>
Gen.	<i>ἀφρονος</i>		<i>ἀφρονων</i>	
Dat.	<i>ἀφροσι</i>		<i>ἀφροσι</i>	

Type 4. Two termination adjectives with third declension vowel endings:

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
	M.F.	N.	M.F.	N.
Nom.	<i>ἀληθης</i>	<i>ἀληθες</i>	<i>ἀληθεις</i>	<i>ἀληθη</i>
Voc.	<i>ἀληθες</i>	<i>ἀληθες</i>	<i>ἀληθεις</i>	<i>ἀληθη</i>
Acc.	<i>ἀληθη</i>	<i>ἀληθες</i>	<i>ἀληθεις</i>	<i>ἀληθη</i>
Gen.	<i>ἀληθους</i>		<i>ἀληθων</i>	
Dat.	<i>ἀληθει</i>		<i>ἀληθεις</i>	

Type 5. The irregular adjective *πας*—all, every:

		<i>Singular</i>		
Nom. Voc.	<i>πας</i>	<i>πασα</i>	<i>παν</i>	
Acc.	<i>παντα</i>	<i>πασαν</i>	<i>παν</i>	
Gen.	<i>παντος</i>	<i>πασης</i>	<i>παντος</i>	
Dat.	<i>παντι</i>	<i>παση</i>	<i>παντι</i>	
		<i>Plural</i>		
Nom. Voc.	<i>παντες</i>	<i>πασαι</i>	<i>παντα</i>	
Acc.	<i>παντας</i>	<i>πασας</i>	<i>παντα</i>	
Gen.	<i>παντων</i>	<i>πασων</i>	<i>παντων</i>	
Dat.	<i>πασι</i>	<i>πασαις</i>	<i>πασι</i>	

(Note: Where *πας* means "all", it indicates a definite number, therefore the noun always has an article.)

Participles are also adjectives (see Lesson XII.)

The following are examples from Greek poets:

1. *των εὐτυχουντων παντες εἰσι συγγενεις.*
2. *ὁ γραμματων ἀπειρος οὐ βλέπει βλέπων.*
3. *και πολλ' ἀπ' ἐχθρων μανθανουσιν οἱ σοφοι.*
4. *φθειρουσιν ἦθη χρησθ' ὁμιλιαι κακαι.*
5. *θεου θελοντος, δυνατα παντα γιγνεται* (a variant form of *γινεται*).
6. *ἐνεστι γαρ πως τουτο τη τυραννιδι νοσημα, τοις φιλοισι* μη πεποιθεναι* (to trust).
7. *το σωμα θνητον, ἡ δε ψυχη ἀθανατος.*

<i>εὐτυχεω</i> —prosper	<i>χρηστος</i> —excellent
<i>ὁμιλια</i> —relationship	<i>θνητος</i> —mortal
<i>νοσημα</i> —disease	<i>ἐχθρος</i> —enemy
<i>ἦθος -ους, το</i> —custom, manners	<i>ἀπειρος</i> —unskilled
<i>συγγενης</i> —akin	<i>πως</i> —somehow
	<i>ἀθανατος</i> —immortal

(Note: * In poetry the dative plural sometimes has an *ι* added to help the metre.)

EXERCISE XXIa

παντες λεγουσιν οτι δει τον ανθρωπον το αγαθον ποιειν, αλλα παντες ου ποιουσι. ο μεν λογος αυτων αληθης, τα δε εργα ψευδη. ανθρωπος γαρ αφρων εστι και πληρης πασης αδικιας. καιπερ θελων το αγαθον ποιησαι, το κακον πρασσει, και το θελημα αυτου ασθενες υπαρχει. οι φιλουντες το αληθες φιλουσι μεγα τι, αλλα αδυνατον εστιν αι το αληθες ειπειν.

αληθης—true

πληρης—full

αφρων—foolish

υπαρχει—is, exists

αδυνατος—impossible

πρασσω—do, practise

ψευδης—false

ασθενης—weak

καιπερ—although

τι—something

αι—always

EXERCISE XXIb

Love is great and good, and those who seek love will find the true joy. The foolish men are full of wickedness, and do not seek good things. They all tell lies, and their works are all evil. If a man wishes to speak true things and to do good he finds much joy. But men are weak, and unskilled in (of) righteousness. Many men wish to do great things in the world, and to gain eternal life, but they are deceived. It is impossible for a weak man to do the truth, but by the grace of God all things are possible.

deceive—πλαναω

possible—δυνατος

LESSON XXI

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES, ADVERBS

There are two ways of forming comparatives in Greek, as in English:

1. By using "more"—*μαλλον* and "most"—*μαλιστα*.
2. By adding suffixes "-er"—*τερος* and "-est"—*τατος*.

There are also two ways of expressing the object with which the comparison is made:

1. By using "than"—*ἤ* and the same case.
 2. By using the Comparative Genitive.
1. The regular method of forming comparatives and superlatives is by adding *-τερος* and *-τατος* to the stem. If the previous vowel is short the stem-vowel is lengthened, e.g.

	<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
(strong)	<i>ισχυρος</i>	<i>ισχυροτερος</i>	[<i>ισχυροτατος</i>]
(wise)	<i>σοφος</i>	<i>σοφωτερος</i>	[<i>σοφωτατος</i>]
(careful)	<i>ακριβης</i>	[<i>ακριβεστερος</i>]	<i>ακριβεστατος</i>
(religious)	<i>δεισιδαιμων</i>	<i>δεισδαιμονεστερος</i>	[<i>δεισιδαιμονεστατος</i>]

BUT the regular superlative only occurs rarely in the New Testament and in other places the comparative is used with a superlative meaning. None of the forms in brackets occurs in the N.T.

2. The following irregular comparisons are important and MUST BE LEARNT:

ἀγαθος—good	κρείσσων, κρείπτων— better	κρατιστος—best
κακος—bad	χειρων, ἥσσων, ἥττων—worse	
πολυς—much	πλειων, πλεων—more	πλειστος—most
μικρος—little	μικροτερος, ἔλασσων, ἐλαττων—less	ἐλαχιστος—least
μεγας—great	μειζων—greater	μεγιστος—greatest
	κρατιστος only in the title	κρατιστε—“your Excellency”.

(Note. Most of these are irregular also in English.)

The declension of the irregular comparatives in *-ων* is as follows:

	<i>Singular</i>	
	M.F.	N.
Nom.	μειζων	μειζον
Acc.	μειζονα, μειζω	μειζον
Gen.	μειζονος	μειζονος
Dat.	μειζονι	μειζονι
	<i>Plural</i>	
	M.F.	N.
Nom.	μειζονες, μειζους	μειζονα, μειζω
Acc.	μειζονας, μειζους	μειζονα, μειζω
Gen.	μειζονων	μειζονων
Dat.	μειζοσι	μειζοσι

ADVERBS

Adverbs answer one of the questions “how”, “why”, “when”, “where”. Some of them exist alone, whilst

others are formed from adjectives, just as they are formed in English by adding “-ly” to adjectives. In Greek they are formed by changing the *-ν* of the genitive plural to *-ς*, e.g. true—*ἀληθων*, truly—*ἀληθως*; wise—*σοφων*, wisely—*σοφως*. The regular comparative adverb ends in *-τερον* and the superlative in *-τατα*, but the latter is not found in the New Testament.

The following adverbs are irregular and **MUST BE LEARNT**:

<i>εὖ</i> — well	<i>βελτιον, κρεισσον</i> — better	[<i>βελτιστα</i>]— best
<i>καλως</i> — well, finely	<i>καλλιον</i> — more finely	[<i>καλλιστα</i>]— most finely
<i>κακως</i> — badly	<i>ἥσσον, ἥττον</i> — worse	[<i>ἥκιστα</i>]— worst
[<i>μαλα</i>]— much	<i>μαλλον</i> — more	<i>μαλιστα</i> — most
<i>πολυ</i> — much	<i>πλειον, πλεον</i> — more	[<i>πλειστα</i>]— most
<i>ἐγγυς</i> — near	<i>ἐγγυτερον</i> — nearer	<i>ἐγγιστα</i> — nearest
<i>ταχυ, ταχεως</i> — quickly	<i>ταχιον</i> — more quickly	<i>ταχιστα</i> — most quickly

(Note: The neuter accusative (singular or plural) is often used as an adverb, e.g. only—*μονον*, much—*πολυ* or *πολλα*.

ὡς with a superlative expresses “as — as possible”, e.g. *ὡς ταχιστα*—as quickly as possible.)

EXERCISE XXIIa

Some lines from Greek authors:

1. *κρεισσον σιωπαν ἔστιν ἢ λαλειν ματην.*
2. *οὐδεις ἀναγκης μαλλον ἰσχυει νομος.*
3. *αἱ δευτεραι πως φροντιδες σοφωτεραι.*

4. ὁ πλειστα πρασων πλεισθ* ἁμαρτανει βροτων.
5. ἔστιν ὁ μεν χειρων, ὁ δε ἀμεινων προς ἔργον ἕκαστον · οὐδεις δ' ἀνθρωπων αὐτος προς ἅπαντα σοφος.
6. χρησμος Ἀπολλωνος ἦν ἐν Δελφοις · σοφος Σοφοκλῆς, σοφωτερος Εὐριπιδῆς, ἀνδρων δε παντων Σωκρατης σοφωτατος.
7. πλεον ἡμισυ παντος, ὡς Ἡσιόδος λεγει.
8. ἀριστον ὕδωρ, ὡς Πινδαρος λεγει.
9. ἔσται ἡ ἐσχατη πλανη χειρων της πρωτης.
10. ἐλευθερος δουλενε · δουλος οὐκ ἔσει.

οὐδεις—no one, no

φροντις—thought

ἀμεινων—better } (not N.T.)

ἀριστος—best

ἅπας—all

ἰσχυω—be strong

πως—somehow

χρησμος—oracle

πλανη—error

περισσον—abundantly

ἀναγκη—necessity

βροτος—mortal

ἡμισυ—half

ἐλευθερος—free

ἕκαστος—each

EXERCISE XXIIb

Truly, love is the greatest gift of God to men. Wisdom is good but love is better. He who loves is stronger than his enemy, because he is most able to forgive sins. To love is more than to be a friend. The friend seeks the good of his friend, but he who loves lays down his life for his beloved. The love of Christ is greater than the love of a brother, and the love of God is greater than the love of a father. Those who find it find joy, and find it more abundantly.

(Note: * Before a rough breathing τ changes to θ in poetry.)

LESSON XXII

PREPOSITIONS

We have already had several Prepositions which govern various cases. It is time to look at them in logical order and to find some arrangement.

Prepositions were originally adverbs, used to make the meaning of the cases more precise. Most of them answer the questions "when" or "where" and underline the meaning already present in the case.

1. Place—Accusative means motion towards
Genitive means motion from
Dative means rest at.

Thus—*εἰς* [into] can only be used with Accusative
ἐκ [out of] „ „ „ „ „ Genitive
ἐν [in] „ „ „ „ „ Dative.

Some Prepositions can be used with more than one case.

Thus—*παρά* [alongside]—with Accusative—to the side of
with Genitive—from the side of
with Dative—at the side of.

2. Time—Accusative means duration over a period
Genitive means within the course of a period
Dative means at a point of time.

Thus—*τρεις ἡμέρας*—for three days
ἐκείνης τῆς ἡμέρας—during that day
ἐκείνῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ—on that day.

The following are the most important meanings of Prepositions:

1. With one case—*α*—Accusative

ἀνα—up

εἰς—into

β—Genitive

ἀντι—over against, instead of

ἀπο—away from [exterior]

ἐκ, ἐξ—out of [interior]

προ—in front of, before

γ—Dative

ἐν—in [time or place]

συν—together with.

2. With two cases—

	<i>Accusative</i>	<i>Genitive</i>
<i>δια</i> [through]	on account of	through, by means of
<i>κατα</i> [down]	according to	against
<i>μετα</i> [amongst]	after	among, with
<i>περι</i> [around]	around [literally]	concerning
<i>ὑπερ</i> [over]	above, beyond	on behalf of
<i>ὑπο</i> [under]	under	by [of agent]

3. With three cases—

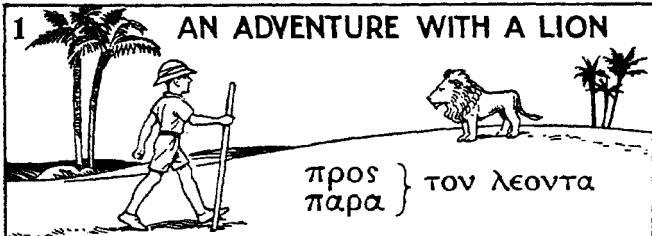
	<i>Accusative</i>	<i>Genitive</i>	<i>Dative</i>
<i>ἐπι</i> [on]	on to, up to	on, in the time of	on, in addition to, at
<i>παρα</i> [beside]	to the side, from the side contrary to	at the side,	near
<i>προς</i> [to]	towards, to from [rare]	at, close to	

(Note the following “improper prepositions”:

With Genitive—*ἀνευ*—without; *ἐνεκα*—for the sake of; *μεχρι*—until; *χαριν*—for the sake of; *πλην*—except; *χωρις*—without; *ἐμπροσθεν*—in front of; *ἐντος*—within; *ἐγγυς*—near; *ἐνωπιον*—in front of.)

1

AN ADVENTURE WITH A LION



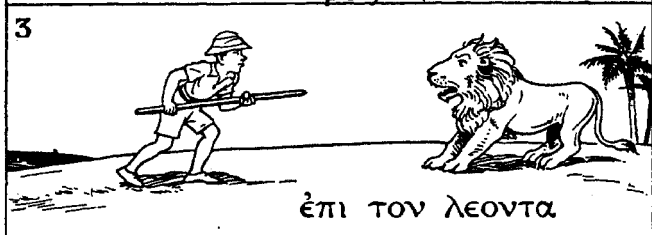
προς } τον λεοντα
 παρα }

2



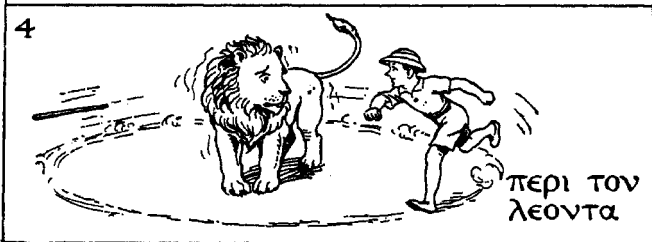
προς } τω λεοντι
 παρα }

3

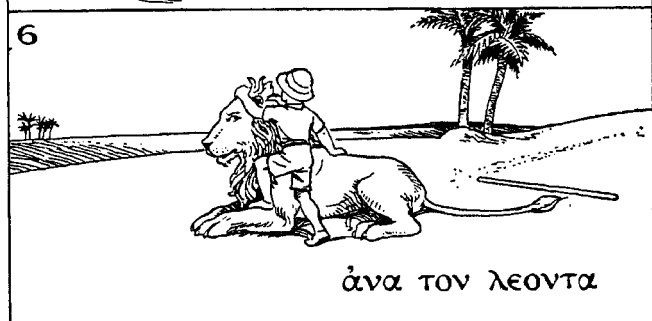
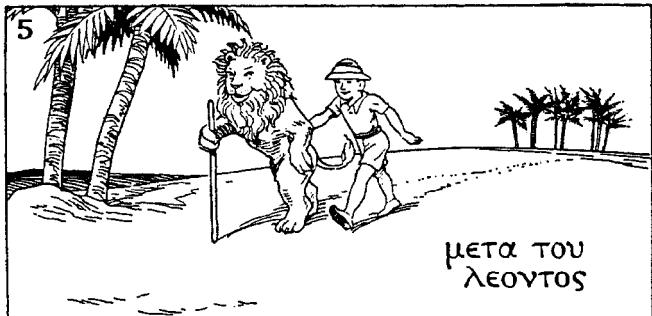


ἐπι τον λεοντα

4



περι τον
 λεοντα



8



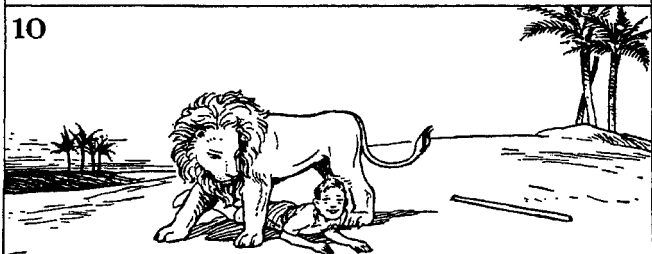
ἐπι του λεοντος

9

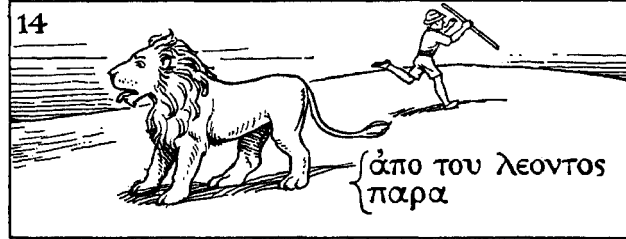
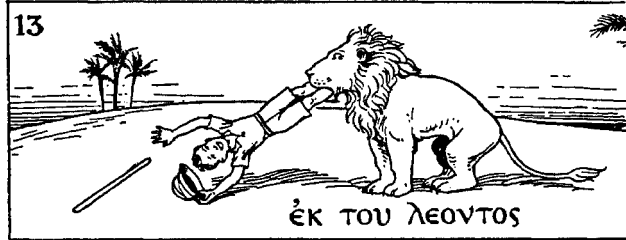
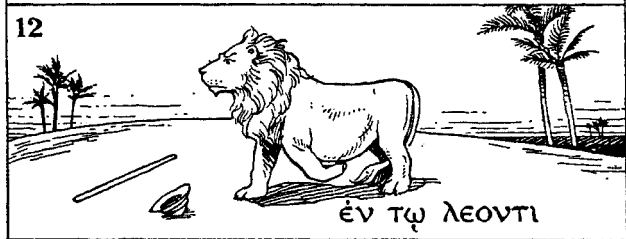
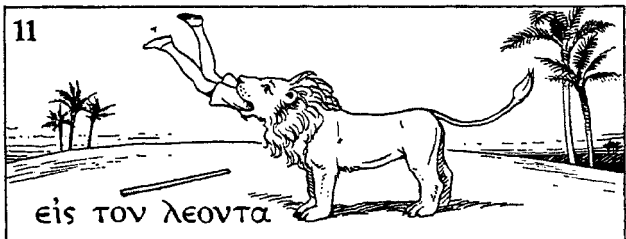


κατα του λεοντος

10



υπο τω λεοντι



Illustrations reproduced from "Teach Yourself Greek"

LESSON XXIII

NUMERALS

The following Numerals occur in the New Testament.

<i>Cardinals</i> (one, two, etc.)	<i>Ordinals</i> (first, second, etc.)	<i>Adverbs</i> (once, twice, etc.)	<i>Distributives</i> (single, double, etc.)
1 εἷς	πρωτος, -η, -ον	ἅπαξ	ἄπλους
2 δυο	δευτερος, -α, -ον	δις	διπλους
3 τρεις	τριτος, -η, -ον	τρεις	
4 τεσσαρες	τεταρτος, -η, -ον		τετραπλους
5 πεντε	πεμπτος, -η, -ον	πεντακις	
6 ἕξ	ἕκτος, -η, -ον		
7 ἑπτα	ἑβδομος, -η, -ον	ἑπτακις	ἑπταπλασιων
8 ὀκτω	ὀγδοος, -η, -ον		
9 ἔννεα	ἐνατος, -η, -ον		
10 δεκα	δεκατος, -η, -ον		
11 ἑνδεκα	ἐνδεκατος, -η, -ον		
12 δωδεκα [δεκαδυο]	δωδεκατος, -η, -ον		
13			
14 δεκατεσσαρες	τεσσαρεςκαιδεκατος		
15 δεκαπεντε	πεντεκαιδεκατος		
16 δεκαεξ			
17			
18 δεκαοκτω			
19			
20 εἴκοσι		200 διακοσιοι, -αι, -α	
30 τριακοντα		300 τριακοσιοι, -αι, -α	
40 τεσσαρακοντα*		400 τετρακοσιοι, -αι, -α	

(Note: * in the N.T. τεσσαρακοντα always has second vowel ε, though in Classical Greek it is α, as in τεσσαρες.)

50	πεντηκοντα [πεντηκοστος]	500	πεντακοσιοι, -αι, -α
60	έξηκοντα	600	έξακοσιοι, -αι, -α
70	έβδομηκοντα [-κις]		
80	όγδοηκοντα		
90	ένενηκοντα		
100	έκατον [έκατονταπλασιων]	1,000	χιλιοι, -αι, -α [χιλιας]
2,000	δισχιλιοι, -αι, -α	10,000	μυριοι, -αι, -α
3,000	τρισχιλιοι, -αι, -α	20,000	δισμυριοι, -αι, -α
4,000	τετρακισχιλιοι, -αι, -α		
5,000	πεντακισχιλιοι, -αι, -α		
7,000	έπτακισχιλιοι, -αι, -α		

Note also:

πολλακις—many times
 ποσακις—how many times?
 πολλαπλασιων—many fold

Cardinals from 1 to 4 are declinable as follows:

	M.	F.	N.	M.F.N.
Nom.	είς	μια	έν	δυο
Acc.	ένα	μιαν	έν	δυο
Gen.	ένος	μιας	ένος	δυο
Dat.	ένι	μια	ένι	δυσι

	M.F.	N.	M.F.	N.
Nom.	τρεις	τρια	τεσσαρες	τεσσαρα
Acc.	τρεις	τρια	τεσσαρας	τεσσαρα
Gen.	τριων		τεσσαρων	
Dat.	τρισι		τεσσαρσι	

Cardinals from 5 to 199 are not declinable.

Cardinals over 200 and Ordinals are declined like *άγαθος*.

ούδεις and *μηδεις* (no one) are declined like *είς*—*ούδεις, ούδεμια, ούδεν* ; *μηδεις, μηδεμια, μηδεν κ.τ.λ.*

Compound numbers are expressed as in English, e.g. 253 is *διακοσιοι πενήκοντα τρεις* (declinable members must be declined).

Letters were used instead of numbers, and distinguished by accents, α' —1; β' —2; γ' —3 κ.τ.λ. α_1 —1,000; β_1 —2,000 κ.τ.λ. But you need not bother about these.

LESSON XXIV

PRONOUNS

Some Pronouns we have already had, and there are a few more.

1. *Personal Pronouns*: First and Second Person—Lesson IX, page 33; Third Person—Lesson VIII, page 31.

Note: αὐτός is also used idiomatically in two ways, which must be carefully distinguished:

- (a) the appropriate form of αὐτός placed *between the article and its noun* means “same”, e.g.
the same man—ὁ αὐτός ἄνθρωπος
of the same woman—τῆς αὐτῆς γυναικος
the same books—τα αὐτά βιβλία

- (b) placed *before the article or after the noun*, it means “self”, e.g.

the man himself—αὐτός ὁ ἄνθρωπος
ὁ ἄνθρωπος αὐτός
of the woman herself—αὐτῆς τῆς γυναικος
τῆς γυναικος αὐτῆς
the children themselves—αὐτά τα παιδιά
τα παιδιά αὐτά

2. *Possessive Pronouns*. The genitive of the Personal pronoun may be used to express possession, but there are also pronominal adjectives, “mine”, “your”, “our”.

The singular pronouns have feminine in -η, like κακός, and the plural pronouns have feminine in -α, like ἅγιος.

They must always be accompanied by the article except when used predicatively.

My	ὁ ἐμός	ἡ ἐμή	το ἐμόν
Our	ὁ ἡμετερός	ἡ ἡμετέρα	το ἡμετερόν
Your	ὁ σός	ἡ σή	το σόν
Your	ὁ ὑμετερός	ἡ ὑμετέρα	το ὑμετερόν

There is no third person possessive pronoun.

3. *Reflexive Pronouns.* These are used when the subject's action "reflects" back upon himself, and are formed by combining the pronoun with αὐτός. They have no Nominative case, but this is expressed by adding αὐτός separately with the personal pronoun, e.g. I myself said . . . —ἐγὼ αὐτός ἐλεγον . . .

	<i>Myself</i>	<i>Yourself</i>	<i>Himself</i>	<i>Herself</i>	<i>Itself</i>
Acc.	ἐμαυτον	σεαυτον	ἐαυτον	ἐαυτην	ἐαυτο
Gen.	ἐμαυτου	σεαυτου	ἐαυτου	ἐαυτης	ἐαυτου
Dat.	ἐμαυτω	σεαυτω	ἐαυτω	ἐαυτη	ἐαυτω

In the Plural there is only one form for "ourselves", "yourselves" and "themselves", but it has three genders:

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Acc.	ἐαυτους	ἐαντας	ἐαυτα
Gen.	ἐαυτων	ἐαντων	ἐαυτων
Dat.	ἐαυτοις	ἐανταις	ἐαυτοις

4. *Reciprocal Pronoun.* This is used when the individual units of a collective subject react. In English we use "each other" or "one another". This can only be plural, and cannot be nominative.

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Acc.	ἄλληλους	ἄλληλας	ἄλληλα
Gen.	ἄλληλων	ἄλληλων	ἄλληλων
Dat.	ἄλληλοις	ἄλληλαις	ἄλληλοις

5. *Demonstrative Pronouns.* That—ἐκεῖνος, this—οὗτος.

Singular

Nom.	ἐκεῖνος	ἐκεῖνη	ἐκεῖνο
Acc.	ἐκεῖνον	ἐκεῖνην	ἐκεῖνο
Gen.	ἐκεῖνου	ἐκεῖνης	ἐκεῖνου
Dat.	ἐκεῖνω	ἐκεῖνῃ	ἐκεῖνω

Plural

Nom.	ἐκεῖνοι	ἐκεῖναι	ἐκεῖνα
Acc.	ἐκεῖνους	ἐκεῖνας	ἐκεῖνα
Gen.	ἐκεῖνων	ἐκεῖνων	ἐκεῖνων
Dat.	ἐκεῖνοις	ἐκεῖναις	ἐκεῖνοῖς

Singular

Nom.	οὗτος	αὕτη	τούτο
Acc.	τούτον	ταυτήν	τούτο
Gen.	τούτου	ταυτῆς	τούτου
Dat.	τούτῳ	ταυτῇ	τούτῳ

Plural

Nom.	οὗτοι	αὗται	ταυτα
Acc.	τούτους	ταυτας	ταυτα
Gen.	τούτων	τούτων	τούτων
Dat.	τούτοις	ταυταις	τούτοις

Note: 1. Where οὗτος has -ο- or -ω- in the ending it has -ο- in the stem; this means that the genitive plural feminine is not ταυτων but τουτων.

2. The demonstrative makes the noun definite, and it must therefore have the article. The order is *either* demonstrative, article, noun *or* article, noun, demonstrative but *never* article, demonstrative, noun, e.g.

οὗτος ὁ ἀνὴρ οἱ ὁ ἀνὴρ οὗτος
 BUT NOT ὁ οὗτος ἀνὴρ οἱ οὗτος ἀνὴρ.

6. *Relative Pronouns* (who, which, that, introducing a relative clause).

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
Nom.	ὅς	ἡ	ὅ	οἱ	αἱ	ἃ
Acc.	ὄν	ἣν	ὄ	οὓς	ἄς	ἄ
Gen.	οὗ	ἣς	οὗ	ῶν	ῶν	ῶν
Dat.	ᾧ	ἣ	ᾧ	οἷς	αἷς	οἷς

Note: The Relative gets its *number* and *gender* from the noun to which it refers, and which is called the antecedent.

The Relative gets its *case* from its function in the relative clause.

7. *Interrogative Pronoun* (who? what?).

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
	M.F.	N.	M.F.	N.
Nom.	τις	τι	τινες	τινα
Acc.	τινα	τι	τινας	τινα
Gen.	τινος	τινος	τινων	τινων
Dat.	τινι	τινι	τισι	τισι

Note: ὅστις (who) is declined in both parts like ὅς and τις but only nom. is common in the New Testament.

8. *Indefinite Pronoun* (someone, anyone).

This is exactly like the Interrogative *τις* in form, but can be distinguished because it does not appear as the first word in the sentence, whereas the Interrogative is almost always the first word. In printed Greek the Interrogative has an accent (*τίς*) whereas the Indefinite has not.

The following list of correlatives will be found useful:

Pronouns

<i>Interrogative</i>		<i>Relative</i>	<i>Demonstrative</i>
<i>Direct</i>	<i>Indirect</i>		
<i>τις</i> ; who?	<i>ὅστις</i> —	<i>ὅς</i> —who	<i>οὗτος</i> —this
<i>ποσος</i> ; how big?	<i>ὅποσος</i> —	<i>ὅσος</i> —as big as	<i>τοσουτος</i> —so big
<i>ποιος</i> ; of what kind?	<i>ὅποιος</i> —	<i>οἷος</i> —such as	<i>τοιουτος</i> —of such kind

Adverbs

<i>Interrogative</i>		<i>Relative</i>	<i>Indefinite</i>	<i>Demonstrative</i>
<i>Direct</i>	<i>Indirect</i>			
<i>που</i> ; where?	<i>ὅπου</i> —	<i>οὗ</i> —where	<i>που</i> — somewhere	<i>ἐκει</i> — there
<i>ποθεν</i> ; whence?	<i>ὅποθεν</i> —	<i>ὅθεν</i> — whence	<i>ποθεν</i> —from somewhere	<i>ἐκειθεν</i> — thence
<i>ποτε</i> ; when?	<i>ὅποτε</i> —	<i>ὅτε</i> —when	<i>ποτε</i> —some time	<i>τοτε</i> — then
<i>πως</i> ; how?	<i>ὅπως</i> —	<i>ὡς</i> —as	<i>πως</i> — somehow	<i>οὕτως</i> — thus

Note:

Direct Interrogatives begin with π -.

Indirect " " " $\delta\pi$ -.

Relatives begin with δ -.

Indefinites are like Interrogatives, but enclitic, i.e. they cannot be the first word in the phrase.

LESSON XXV

USE OF THE INFINITIVE

So far our work has mostly consisted of learning the "accidence" of Greek—that is to say, the formation of words and their modes of inflection. It is now necessary to study a little of "syntax", that is to say, the way in which words are put together in sentences. We have mentioned some ways in connection with the Infinitive, Subjunctive and Participle already, but now we shall look a little more closely at the Infinitive.

In many cases the Greek Infinitive is used exactly as the English Infinitive, e.g. in completing the sense of a noun, adjective or verb:

- (a) a time to return—*καιρος ανακαμψαι*.
- (b) able to do—*δυνατος ποιησαι*.
- (c) he wishes to go away—*θελει απελθειν*.
- (d) he commanded me to drink—*εκελευσε με πειν*.
- (e) we tried to escape—*επειρασασαμεν αποφυγειν*.
- (f) he was not able to go—*ουκ εδυνατο ελθειν*.
- (g) it is necessary to go away—*δει απελθειν*.

In all these cases there is no difficulty, but there is one point which must be noted: when the Infinitive has a subject which is not the subject of the main verb, that subject is put in the *Accusative* case, e.g. it is necessary for me to go—*δει με απελθειν*.

Accusative and Infinitive. This construction is so important that it deserves a heading to itself. It is used very frequently after verbs of saying, thinking, etc., where we use a clause introduced by "that". Instead of using

a clause, the subject of what is said is put in the Accusative, and the verb in the Infinitive: e.g.

How do they say that the Christ is the son of David?
πως λεγουσι τον Χριστον ειναι υιον Δαβιδ ;

After verbs of preventing this construction is used: e.g.

Do not prevent them from coming to me.
μη κωλυετε αυτους ελθειν προς με.

Articular Infinitive. The Infinitive is a verbal NOUN, and as a noun it can take an article, which is always neuter. It can also be used in different cases, and the article is declined, though the Infinitive remains unchanged. As subject of the sentence it is in the Nominative case, as object in the Accusative, and it may also be used after prepositions, when it takes the appropriate case:

Nom. (a) Subject. To work (working) is good for students.

το εργαζεσθαι αγαθον εστι τοις μαθηταις.

Acc. (b) Object. I do not refuse to die.

οὐ παραιτουμαι το αποθανειν.

Acc. (c) After *εις* or *προς* expressing *purpose*. I went to see him.

ηλθον προς [εις] το θεωρειν αυτον.

Acc. (d) After *δια* expressing *cause*. Because it had no root it withered.

δια το μη εχειν ριζαν εξηρανθη.

Dat. (e) After *εν* expressing *means*. Christ saved us by dying.

ο Χριστος εσωσεν ημας εν τω αποθανειν.

Dat. (f) After *εν* expressing *time when*. When he slept, the enemy came.

εν τω καθευδειν αυτον ο εχθρος ηλθεν.

Gen. (g) After *προ* expressing *time before*. Before sleeping, you ought to pray.

προ του καθευδειν δει σε προσευχεσθαι.

Acc. (h) After *μετα* expressing *time after*. After Christ was raised, he appeared to them.

μετα το εγερθηναι τον Χριστον εφανη αυτοις.

Consecutive Infinitive. This is used to express the consequence of an action, and is introduced by *ωστε* (so that).

I am not so foolish as to believe your excuses.

ουχ ουτως μωρος ειμι ωστε πιστευειν ταις προφασεσιν υμων.

The winds blew, so that the house fell.

οι ανεμοι επνευσαν ωστε τον οικον πεσειν.

There are a few cases when *ωστε* is followed by an Indicative to express an *unexpected* result, e.g. John iii. 16; Galatians ii. 13.

πριν or *πριν η* [before] is followed by Accusative and Infinitive when the main verb is Affirmative.

πριν αλεκτορα φωνησαι τρις απαρνηση με.

Before the cock crows you shall deny me thrice.

EXERCISE XXIIIa

1. *τις δ' οιδεν ει το ζην μεν εστι καθθανειν, το καθθανειν δε ζην κατω νομιζεται ;*
2. *το αγαπαν τον θεον εξ ολης καρδιας και το αγαπαν τον πλησιον ως εαυτον περισσοτερον εστι παντων των ολοκαυτωματων και θυσιων.*
3. *προ γαρ του ελθειν τινας απο Ιακωβου συνησθιεν ο Πιτρος μετα των εθνων.*
4. *μετα δε το σιγησαι αυτους απεκριθη Ιακωβος.*
5. *ουκ εχετε δια το μη αιτεισθαι υμας.*

6. ὁ Ἰησους ἦλθεν εἰς τον κοσμον προς το τους ἁμαρτωλους σωθηται.
 7. κυριε, καταβηθι πριν ἀποθανειν το παιδιον μου.

EXERCISE XXIIIb

Before going to the city it is necessary to enquire about the way. After you have heard this, you will be able to make your way there, but whilst you are going, do not speak to anyone. If anyone tells you to go into his house, do not listen to him. He will steal your money so that you will not be able to buy bread. Before he seizes you, run away. The wise man does not believe the fools who say that there is much money in the city, because he knows that they are fools. To get money a man must work, for God said to Adam that by working he must eat.

(Translate phrases in italics by using Infinitive constructions.)

LESSON XXVI

USE OF PARTICIPLES

We have already learned something about Participles in Lesson XII (p. 56). It was there noted that the Participle is both a verb and an adjective, and has some of the characteristics of both. Like an adjective it can stand for a noun when the article is added to it.

Participle with Article. Sometimes is the equivalent of a noun and may be translated as such: e.g. ὁ σπειρων—the sower; Ἰωαννης ὁ βαπτιζων—John the baptizer.

Sometimes it is the equivalent of an adjectival clause, and may be translated into English by a relative: e.g.

ὁ μενων ἐν ἀγαπῃ μενει ἐν τῷ Θεῷ.

He who remains in love, remains in God.

τοῦτο ἐστὶ τὸ ῥηθεν ὑπο τῶν προφητῶν.

This is that which was said by the prophets.

οἱ ἄνθρωποι οὐ φιλοῦσι τοὺς μισουντας αὐτοὺς.

Men do not love those who hate them.

δει με ἐργαζεσθαι τὰ ἔργα τοῦ πεμψαντος με.

I must work the works of him who sent me.

Participle in place of a clause

(a) Relative clause:

πιστευετε εἰς τὸν δυναμενον σωσαι ὑμας.

Believe in him who is able to save you.

(b) Temporal clause:

πορευομενος παρα τὴν ὁδὸν εἶδον τὸν κυνα.

Whilst going along the road I saw the dog.

ἐξελθων ἐκ τοῦ οἴκου εἶδον τὸν κυνα.

After going out of the house I saw the dog.

(c) Causal clause:

παντες εφοβουντο ιδοντες το δραμα.

They were all afraid because they saw the vision.

(d) Modal clause:

τουτο ποιων τον νομον πληρωσεις.

By doing this you will fulfil the law.

(e) Conditional clause:

πως εκφευξομεθα τηλικαντης αμελησαντες σωτηριας ;

How shall we escape if we neglect so great a salvation?

(f) Concessive clause:

καιπερ υιος ων εμαθεν την υπακοην.

Though he was a Son, he learned obedience.

Genitive Absolute. If the participle is used in any of the above ways, but has a subject which is not connected with any noun or pronoun in the main sentence, the subject and the participle are put into the Genitive case, and the construction is called the Genitive Absolute (from a Latin word which means "not bound", i.e. to the rest of the sentence):

αυτου ειποντος τουτο, η γυνη απηλθεν.

When he had said this the woman went away.

εκβληθεντος του δαιμονιου ελαλησεν ο κωφος.

When the devil was cast out, the dumb man spoke.

Note: Greek always preferred to build up sentences by putting one or more participles subordinate to a main verb, rather than a number of main verbs connected by "and" or "but". This is most noticeable in the New Testament in the writings of Luke. Here is the beginning of Paul's speech at Athens:

Ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, κατα παντα ὡς δεισιδαιμονεστερους ὑμας θεωρω. διερχομενος γαρ και αναθεωρων τα σεβασματα ὑμων, εὑρον και βωμον ἐν ᾧ ἐπεγεγραπτο Ἄγνωστω

Θεω. ὁ οὖν ἀγνοοῦντες εὐσεβείτε τουτο ἐγὼ καταγγέλλω ὑμῖν. ὁ Θεὸς ὁ ποιήσας τον κοσμον και παντα τα ἐν αὐτῷ, οὗτος οὐρανοῦ και γῆς κυριὸς ὑπαρχῶν οὐκ ἐν χειροποιητοῖς ναοῖς κατοικεῖ· οὐδὲ ὑπο χειρῶν ἀνθρωπινῶν θεραπευεται προσδεόμενος τινος, αὐτὸς δίδους πασι ζωὴν και πνοὴν και τα παντα.

EXERCISE XXIVa

The following passages are altered from the New Testament, but to find the meaning of words you have not yet had, look at Mark i. ^{16 f} and Acts ix.

και παραγων παρα την θαλασσαν της Γαλιλαιας εἶδεν Σιμωνα και Ἄνδρεαν τον ἀδελφον Σιμωνος ἀμφιβαλλοντας ἐν τη θαλασῃ. και εἶπεν αὐτοῖς, ἔλθετε ὀπισω μου. και ἀφεντες τα δικτυα ἐπορευοντο ὀπισω του Ἰησοῦ. και παραγοντων αὐτῶν, Ἰωαννης και Ἰακωβος, οἱ του Ζεβεδαιου υἱοὶ ἦσαν ἐν τῷ πλοιῷ. ὁ δε Ἰησοῦς ἐκάλεσεν αὐτους καταρτιζοντας τα δικτυα. ὁ πατηρ αὐτῶν Ζεβεδαιος ἰδων τον Ἰησοῦν ἀφηκεν αὐτους, και εἶπεν, οὐκ ἐγὼ κωλυσω ὑμας θελοντας συν ἐκείνῳ πορευεσθαι. και εἰσελθων ὁ Ἰησοῦς εἰς την συναγωγὴν ἤρξατο διδασκειν και ἦν διδασκων αὐτους ὡς ἐξουσιαν ἔχων. και ἔλθοντος ἀνθρωποῦ τινος ἐν πνευματι ἀκαθαρτῷ οἱ Φαρισαῖοι εἶπον, τι ποιησει; ὁ δε Ἰησοῦς γινους τους διαλογισμοὺς αὐτῶν ἀπεκριθη λεγων, δια τι συζητεῖτε προς ἑαυτοὺς λεγοντες τι ποιησει; ἐν τῷ κοσμῷ μενοντα δεῖ με ἐργαζεσθαι τα ἔργα του πατρος μου. και εἶπεν τῷ ἀνθρωπῷ, ἀναστας ἔλθε προς με. και του Ἰησοῦ λεγοντος, ἐξέλθε ἐξ αὐτοῦ, το δαιμονιον σπαραξαν αὐτον ἐξήλθεν.

EXERCISE XXIVb

Translate the words in italics by participles:

Saul, *going* to the high priest asked from him letters

to Damascus. For he wished *to go* there and *find* those who *were* of the Way, and bring them *bound* to Jerusalem. And as he was *drawing near* to Damascus suddenly a light from heaven shone around him. And he heard a voice *saying* to him, Saul, Saul, why are you persecuting me? The men who *were* with him, *hearing* the voice, were afraid, and because they *did not see* anyone they said an angel spoke to him. Saul fell to the ground when he *heard* the voice, and although his eyes *were open* he saw no one. Then a disciple named Ananias, *hearing* a message from the Lord, *rose up* and came to the house where Saul was lodging. When Saul was *praying*, Ananias *came* to the house and went in. Then he *laid* his hands on Saul and said, Jesus, *who appeared* to you on the road, sent me to open your eyes. And when he *laid* his hands on Saul his eyes were opened, and he saw again.

LESSON XXVII

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

The construction of sentences which express a condition in Greek is quite straightforward, providing that certain points are kept in mind. We have already noted that a condition may be expressed by a Participle (p. 126), but the more common way is by using a clause introduced by *εἰ* (if), followed by the main clause which expresses the result of the condition. The "if" clause is called the **PROTASIS** (that which is set out beforehand), and the result-clause is called the **APODOSIS** (that which is given back, the response).

There are six possible types of conditional sentence, which can be classified in two ways, either with reference to the time to which they refer, or with reference to the probability or otherwise of the fulfilment of the condition.

In reference to time they are **PAST**, **PRESENT** and **FUTURE**.

In reference to fulfilment they are **FULFILLED** and **UNFULFILLED**.

It is important to bear in mind one obvious point: If the condition is either past or present, the result of it is a *fact*, whether it is fulfilled or unfulfilled, whether known or unknown. If fulfilled, it is a positive fact; if unfulfilled, it is a negative fact, but in any case it is a **FACT**. Therefore, in accordance with the principle noted on page 74, the mood used in Greek must be Indicative. On the other hand, if the condition is future, it is a possibility and not yet a fact, therefore the mood of the verb must be the Subjunctive. If this is borne in mind there will be little difficulty in constructing conditional sentences.

If the Past or Present condition is not fulfilled, the non-fulfilment is a fact, but the sentence also suggests a

possibility which might have occurred, but did not. In order to express this, the verb in the Apodosis is qualified with the particle *ἄν* which cannot be translated, but which indicates a fact which is unfulfilled.

Bearing these points in mind, we can construct any type of Conditional Sentence from the following chart:

TIME	SIMPLE	UNFULFILLED
Past	(If A was, B was) E.g. If I said this, it happened P. <i>εἰ</i> with past indicative A. —past indicative <i>εἰ τοῦτο εἶπον, ἐγένετο</i>	(If A had been, B would have been) E.g. If I had said this, it would have happened <i>εἰ</i> with aorist indicative— aorist indicative with <i>ἄν</i> <i>εἰ τοῦτο εἶπον, ἐγένετο ἄν</i>
Present	(If A is, B is) E.g. If I say this, it happens P. <i>εἰ</i> with present indicative— A. present indicative <i>εἰ τοῦτο λεγω, γινεται</i>	(If A were, B would be) E.g. If I were saying this, it would be happening <i>εἰ</i> with imperfect indicative— imperfect indicative with <i>ἄν</i> <i>εἰ τοῦτο ἐλεγον, ἐγινετο ἄν</i>
Future	(If A be, B will be) E.g. If I say this, it will happen P. <i>εἰ</i> with subjunctive— A. future indicative <i>εἰάν εἶπω τοῦτο, γενησεται</i>	(If A were to be, B would be) E.g. If I were to say this, it would happen <i>εἰ</i> with optative— optative with <i>ἄν</i> <i>εἰ τοῦτο εἶποιμι, γενοιτο ἄν</i> (THIS TYPE IS NOT IN THE N.T.)

EXERCISE XXVa

1. εἰ κακῶς ἐλάλησα, εὐθύς μετενοήσα.
2. εἰ υἱὸς εἶ του θεοῦ, καταβῆθι ἀπο τοῦ σταυροῦ.
3. εἰ νεκροὶ οὐκ ἐγείρονται, οὐδὲ Χριστὸς ἐγήγερται.
4. εἰ θελεῖς εἰσελθεῖν εἰς τὴν ζωὴν, τηρεῖ τὰς ἐντολάς.
5. ἔαν το ἄλας μωρανθῇ, ἐν τινὶ ἀλισθησεται;
6. ἔαν ἀφητε τοῖς ἀνθρώποις τὰ παραπτώματα, ἀφήσει καὶ ὑμῖν ὁ πατὴρ ὑμῶν ὁ οὐράνιος.
7. ἔαν ἡ ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ἢ βουλή αὐτῆ, καταλυθησεται.
8. εἰ ἦδει ὁ οἰκοδεσποτὴς ποῖα φυλακῆ ὁ κλεπτῆς ἐρχεται, ἐγρηγορήσεν ἂν.
9. Κυριε, εἰ ἦς ὧδε, οὐκ ἂν ἀπεθάνεν ὁ ἀδελφὸς μου.
10. εἰ ἔμε ἦδειτε, καὶ τὸν πατέρα μου ἂν ἦδειτε.
11. εἰ τυφλοὶ ἦτε, οὐκ ἂν εἶχετε ἄμαρτιαν.
12. εἰ ὁ θεὸς πατὴρ ὑμῶν ἦν, ἠγάπατε ἂν ἔμε.

μετανοῶ—repent

μωραίνω—spoil

ἀλίξω—make salt

παραπῶμα—fault, transgression

βουλή—counsel, plan

καταλυῶ—destroy

φυλακῆ—watch (of time)

γρηγορῶ—keep awake

EXERCISE XXVb

1. If the kingdom of heaven were within you, you would know the peace of God in your hearts.
2. If we had done these things we should not have been true servants of God.
3. If the householder knows at what hour the thief comes, he will watch.
4. If you love me, you will keep my commandments.
5. If Jesus had not gone to Jerusalem, he would not have been crucified.
6. Unless your righteousness is more than that of the Pharisees, you can never be saved.

7. If you knew the gift of God and who it is who asks for water, you would ask him and he would give you living water.
8. If I did anything wrong, tell me and I will repent.
9. If I please men, I am not the servant of Christ.
10. If you were truly righteous, you would have known this to be sin.

LESSON XXVIII

OPTATIVE

The Optative mood is rare in the New Testament, but for the sake of completeness it must be learned. Its endings always have a diphthong. It is only found in the New Testament in the Present and Aorist Tenses, and the endings are as follows:

Active:

Present and Second Aorist: *-οιμι, -οις, -οι, -οιμεν, -οιτε, -οιεν.*

First Aorist: *-αιμι, -αις, -αι, -αιμεν, -αιτε, -αιεν.*

Middle:

Present and Second Aorist: *-οιμην, -οιο, -οιτο, -οιμεθα, -οισθε, -οιντο.*

First Aorist: *-αιμην, -αιο, -αιτο, -αιμεθα, -αισθε, -αιντο.*

Passive:

Present: *-οιμην, -οιο, -οιτο, -οιμεθα, -οισθε, -οιντο.*

Aorist: *-ειην, -ειης, -ειη, -ειμεν, -ειτε, -ειεν.*

The Optative of Contracted Verbs in *-αω, -εω, and -οω* is not found in the New Testament.

The only forms of the Optative of verbs in *-μι* found in the New Testament are the third person singular aorist optative active of *διδωμι* which is *δωη*, and the optative of *ειμι* which is

<i>ειην</i>	<i>ειημεν</i>	<i>οι</i>	<i>ειμεν</i>
<i>ειης</i>	<i>ειητε</i>	<i>οι</i>	<i>ειτε</i>
<i>ειη</i>	<i>ειεν</i>		

The negative of the Optative is *μη*.

USES OF OPTATIVE:

1. To express a wish—*μη γένοιτο*. May it not happen, God forbid!
ἴδου, ἡ δούλη Κυρίου · γένοιτο μοι κατὰ τὸ ῥῆμα σου.
 Behold the handmaid of the Lord; may it be to me according to thy word.
τὸ ἀργυριὸν σὺν σοὶ εἴη εἰς ἀπώλειαν.
 May you and your money perish.
2. In dependent questions—(with *ἂν*)
 This usage is only found in Luke and Acts, and is almost exclusively used in the phrase *τι ἂν εἴη, τις ἂν εἴη*.
ἀκουσας δε ὄχλου διαπορευομενου, ἐπυνθανετο τι ἂν εἴη τουτο.
 Hearing the crowd going by, he asked what this might be.
3. In Conditional Sentences—
 There is an incomplete example in 1 Peter iii. 14 of a remote future condition, in which only the Protasis occurs:
ἀλλ' εἰ καὶ πασχοιτε διὰ δικαιοσυνην, μακαριοι.
 But even if you should suffer for righteousness' sake, blessed are you.
 (Cf. also 1 Peter iii. 17 and Acts xx. 16.)
4. Potential Optative—
 There are three examples of an optative used to express what would or might possibly be.
πως γὰρ ἂν δυναίμην, ἔαν μὴ τις ὁδηγήσει με ;
 How could I, unless someone guides me?
5. After *πριν* when the main clause is negative—
 There is one example of this in Acts xxv. 16.

οὐ AND μη

The following points may be noted about the use of οὐ and μη:

1. Normally οὐ negatives facts and μη negatives possibilities.
2. οὐ almost always negatives the Indicative, the only exception in the New Testament being in the Protasis of unfulfilled conditions, where the negative is usually μη.
3. μη always negatives Imperative, Subjunctive and Optative.
4. μη almost always negatives Participles and Infinitives, but there are a few exceptions. (There are about seventeen uses of οὐ with a Participle.)
5. In clauses introduced by μη meaning "lest" the negative is οὐ even though the verb is in the Subjunctive.
6. Compound negatives.

If a compound negative follows a simple negative they strengthen one another, otherwise they cancel out.

E.g. οὐχ ὄρα οὐδεις—no one at all sees; οὐδεις οὐχ ὄρα—everyone sees.

THE PARADIGM

TENSE WITH STEM	INDICATIVE		IMPERATIVE
	PRIMARY	HISTORIC	
PRESENT ACTIVE λυ-	λυ-ω λυ-εις λυ-ει λυ-ομεν λυ-ετε λυ-ουσι	ἐ-λυ-ον ἐ-λυ-εις ἐ-λυ-ε ἐ-λυ-ομεν ἐ-λυ-ετε ἐ-λυ-ον	λυ-ε λυ-ετω λυ-ετε λυ-ετωσαν
FUTURE ACTIVE λυσ-	λυσ-ω λυσ-εις λυσ-ει λυσ-ομεν λυσ-ετε λυσ-ουσι		
FIRST AORIST ACTIVE [WEAK] λυσα-		ἐ-λυσ-α ἐ-λυσ-ας ἐ-λυσ-ε ἐ-λυσ-αμεν ἐ-λυσ-ατε ἐ-λυσ-αν	λυσ-ον λυσ-ατω λυσ-ατε λυσ-ατωσαν
SECOND AORIST ACTIVE [STRONG] [λαβ-]		ἐ-λαβ-ον ἐ-λαβ-εις ἐ-λαβ-ε ἐ-λαβ-ομεν ἐ-λαβ-ετε ἐ-λαβ-ον	λαβ-ε λαβ-ετω λαβ-ετε λαβ-ετωσαν
PERFECT ACTIVE λε-λυκ-	λε-λυκ-α λε-λυκ-ας λε-λυκ-ε λε-λυκ-αμεν λε-λυκ-ατε λε-λυκ-ασι	ἐ-λε-λυκ-ειν ἐ-λε-λυκ-εις ἐ-λε-λυκ-ει ἐ-λε-λυκ-ειμεν ἐ-λε-λυκ-ειτε ἐ-λε-λυκ-εισαν	λε-λυκ-ε λε-λυκ-ετω λε-λυκ-ετε λε-λυκ-ετωσαν
PRESENT MIDDLE AND PASSIVE λυ-	λυ-ομαι λυ-η λυ-εται λυ-ομεθα λυ-εσθε λυ-ονται	ἐ-λυ-ομην ἐ-λυ-ου ἐ-λυ-ετο ἐ-λυ-ομεθα ἐ-λυ-εσθε ἐ-λυ-οντο	λυ-ου λυ-εσθω λυ-εσθε λυ-εσθωσαν

OF λυω

SUBJUNCTIVE PRIMARY	OPTATIVE HISTORIC	INFINITIVE VERBAL NOUN	PARTICIPLE VERBAL ADJECTIVE
λυ-ω λυ-ης λυ-η λυ-ωμεν λυ-ητε λυ-ωσι	λυ-οιμι λυ-οις λυ-οι λυ-οιμεν λυ-οιτε λυ-οιεν	λυ-ειν	λυ-ων λυ-ουσα λυ-ον
	λυσ-οιμι λυσ-οις λυσ-οι λυσ-οιμεν λυσ-οιτε λυσ-οιεν	λυσ-ειν	λυσ-ων λυσ-ουσα λυσ-ον
λυσ-ω λυσ-ης λυσ-η λυσ-ωμεν λυσ-ητε λυσ-ωσι	λυσ-αιμι λυσ-αις λυσ-αι λυσ-αιμεν λυσ-αιτε λυσ-αιεν	λυσ-αι	λυσ-ας λυσ-ασα λυσ-αν
λαβ-ω λαβ-ης λαβ-η λαβ-ωμεν λαβ-ητε λαβ-ωσι	λαβ-οιμι λαβ-οις λαβ-οι λαβ-οιμεν λαβ-οιτε λαβ-οιεν	λαβ-ειν	λαβ-ων λαβ-ουσα λαβ-ον
λε-λυκ-ω λε-λυκ-ης λε-λυκ-η λε-λυκ-ωμεν λε-λυκ-ητε λε-λυκ-ωσι	λε-λυκ-οιμι λε-λυκ-οις λε-λυκ-οι λε-λυκ-οιμεν λε-λυκ-οιτε λε-λυκ-οιεν	λε-λυκ-ειναι	λε-λυκ-ως λε-λυκ-υια λε-λυκ-ος
λυ-ωμαι λυ-η λυ-ηται λυ-ωμεθα λυ-ησθε λυ-ωνται	λυ-οιμην λυ-οιο λυ-οιτο λυ-οιμεθα λυ-οισθε λυ-οιντο	λυ-εσθαι	λυ-ομενος λυ-ομενη λυ-ομενον

[FROM THE
VERB
λαμβάνω]

THE PARADIGM

TENSE WITH STEM	INDICATIVE		IMPERATIVE
	PRIMARY	HISTORIC	
FUTURE MIDDLE λυσ-	λυσ-ομαι λυσ-η λυσ-εται λυσ-ομεθα λυσ-εσθε λυσ-ονται		
FIRST AORIST MIDDLE [WEAK] λυσα-		ἐ-λυσ-αμην ἐ-λυσ-ω ἐ-λυσ-ατο ἐ-λυσ-αμεθα ἐ-λυσ-ασθε ἐ-λυσ-αντο	λυσ-αι λυσ-ασθω λυσ-ασθε λυσ-ασθωσαν
SECOND AORIST MIDDLE [STRONG] [λαβ-]		ἐ-λαβ-ομην ἐ-λαβ-ου ἐ-λαβ-ετο ἐ-λαβ-ομεθα ἐ-λαβ-εσθε ἐ-λαβ-οντο	λαβ-ου λαβ-εσθω λαβ-εσθε λαβ-εσθωσαν
PERFECT MIDDLE AND PASSIVE λε-λυ-	λε-λυ-μαι λε-λυ-σαι λε-λυ-ται λε-λυ-μεθα λε-λυ-σθε λε-λυ-νται	ἐ-λε-λυ-μην ἐ-λε-λυ-σο ἐ-λε-λυ-το ἐ-λε-λυ-μεθα ἐ-λε-λυ-σθε ἐ-λε-λυ-ντο	λε-λυ-σο λε-λυ-σθω λε-λυ-σθε λε-λυ-σθωσαν
FIRST AORIST PASSIVE [WEAK] λυθη-		ἐ-λυθ-ην ἐ-λυθ-ης ἐ-λυθ-η ἐ-λυθ-ημεν ἐ-λυθ-ητε ἐ-λυθ-ησαν	λυθ-ητι λυθ-ητω λυθ-ητε λυθ-ητωσαν
FUTURE PASSIVE λυθησ-	λυθ-ησ-ομαι λυθ-ησ-η λυθ-ησ-εται λυθ-ησ-ομεθα λυθ-ησ-εσθε λυθ-ησ-ονται		

Notes: Perfect Subjunctive and Optative, Middle and Passive, are formed by using the Subjunctive and Optative of *εἰμι* with the Perfect Participle Passive. This is called a "Periphrastic" Tense.

OF λυω (continued)

SUBJUNCTIVE PRIMARY	OPTATIVE HISTORIC	INFINITIVE VERBAL NOUN	PARTICIPLE VERBAL ADJECTIVE	[FROM THE VERB λαμβάνω]
	λυσ-οιμην λυσ-οιο λυσ-οιτο λυσ-οιμεθα λυσ-οισθε λυσ-οιντο	λυσ-εσθαι	λυσ-ομενος λυσ-ομενη λυσ-ομενον	
λυσ-ωμαι λυσ-η λυσ-ηται λυσ-ωμεθα λυσ-ησθε λυσ-ωνται	λυσ-αιμην λυσ-αιο λυσ-αιτο λυσ-αιμεθα λυσ-αισθε λυσ-αιντο	λυσ-ασθαι	λυσ-αμενος λυσ-αμενη λυσ-αμενον	
λαβ-ωμαι λαβ-η λαβ-ηται λαβ-ωμεθα λαβ-ησθε λαβ-ωνται	λαβ-οιμην λαβ-οιο λαβ-οιτο λαβ-οιμεθα λαβ-οισθε λαβ-οιντο	λαβ-εσθαι	λαβ-ομενος λαβ-ομενη λαβ-ομενον	
[SEE NOTE BELOW]	[SEE NOTE BELOW]	λε-λυ-σθαι	λε-λυ-μενος λε-λυ-μενη λε-λυ-μενον	
λυθ-ω λυθ-ης λυθ-η λυθ-ωμεν λυθ-ητε λυθ-ωσι	λυθ-ειην λυθ-ειης λυθ-ειη λυθ-ειμεν λυθ-ειτε λυθ-ειεν	λυθ-ηναι	λυθ-εις λυθ-εισα λυθ-εν	
	λυθ-ησ-οιμην λυθ-ησ-οιο λυθ-ησ-οιτο λυθ-ησ-οιμεθα λυθ-ησ-οισθε λυθ-ησ-οιντο	λυθ-ησ-εσθαι	λυθ-ησ-ομενος λυθ-ησ-ομενη λυθ-ησ-ομενον	

The Second Aorist Passive is exactly like the First Aorist Passive without -θ-, but in the second singular imperative the ending is -θι instead of -τι, e.g. σπαρηθι.

All Aorist Passive endings are like Active endings.

LIST OF VERBS

(Note: This list is not exhaustive but gives the most common verbs in the New Testament. The arrangement in groups could be much more elaborate but would not greatly help the ordinary student. The only satisfactory way to deal with them is to learn off the Principal Parts as given until they come automatically.)

PRESENT ACTIVE	FUTURE ACTIVE	AORIST ACTIVE	PERFECT ACTIVE	PERFECT PASSIVE	AORIST PASSIVE	MEANING
GROUP I—VERBS GENERALLY LIKE λω, BUT WITH IRREGULARITIES						
1. ἄγω	ἄξω	ἤγαγον	ἤχα	ἤγμαι	ἤχθην	lead
2. ἀκούω	{ ἀκούσω ἀκουσομαι	ἤκουσα	ἀκήκοα		ἤκουσθην	hear
3. ἁμαρτανώ	ἁμαρτήσω	{ ἤμαρτον ἤμαρτήσα	ἤμαρτηκα			sin
4. ἀνοίγω	ἀνοίξω	{ ἀνεώξα ἤνεωξα ἤνοιξα	ἀνεώγα	{ ἀνεώγμαι ἤνεώγμαι ἤνοιγμαι	{ ἀνεώχθων ἤνεώχθην ἤνοιχθην	open
5. ἀποθνήσκω	ἀποθάνομαι	ἀπέθανον	τεθνήκα			die
6. ἀποκαλύπτω	ἀποκαλύψω	ἀπέκαλυψα			ἀπέκαλυφθην	reveal
7. ἀρεσκώ	ἀρεσσω	ἤρεσα				please
8. ἀύξανω	αὐξήσω	ἠύξησα			ἠύξηθην	increase
9. βαπτίζω	βαπτισώ	ἐβαπτισα		βεβαπτισμαι	ἐβαπτισθην	baptize
10. βαίνω	βήσομαι	ἔβην	βεβηκα			go
11. βλέπω	βλέψω	ἐβλεψα				see
12. γινώσκω	γνώσομαι	ἔγνων	ἐγνώκα	ἐγνώσομαι	ἐγνώσθην	know
13. γράφω	γράψω	ἔγραψα	γεγράφα	γεγραμμαι	ἔγραψην	write
14. διδάσκω	δίδαξω	ἐδίδαξα			ἐδίδαχθην	teach
15. ἐκκοπτό	ἐκκοψώ	ἐξεκοψα			ἐξεκοπήν	cut out
16. εὕρισκω	εὕρησώ	εὔρον	εὔρηκα		εὔρηθην	find
17. θέλω	θελήσω	ἤθελησα				will, wish
18. καταλείπω	καταλείψω	κατέλιπον				leave
19. κηρύσσω	κηρύξω	ἐκήρυξα	κεκήρυχα	κεκηρυγμαι	ἐκήρυχθην	preach, herald
20. κραζώ	{ κραξώ κεκραξομαι	ἐκραξα	κεκραγα			cry out
21. κρύπτω	κρύψω	ἐκρύψα	κεκρύφα	κεκρυμμαι	{ ἐκρυφθην ἐκρυβην ἐληφθην	hide
22. λαμβάνω	ληψομαι	ἔλαβον	εἴληφα	εἴλημμαι		take
23. μαθηθάνω	μαθήσομαι	ἐμαθον	μεμαθήκα			learn
24. πείθω	πεισώ	ἐπεισα	πεποιθα	πεπεισομαι	ἐπεισθην	persuade
25. πέμπω	πέμψω	ἐπέμψα			ἐπέμφθην	send
26. πίνω	πίομαι	ἔπιον	πέπωκα		ἐποθην	drink
27. πίπτω	πέσομαι	ἔπεσον	πέπτωκα			fall
28. πιστεύω	πίστευσω	ἐπίστευσα	πεπίστευκα	πεπιστευμαι	ἐπίστευθην	believe
29. πράσσω	πράξω	ἐπράξα	πεπράχα	πεπραγμαι	ἐπράχθην	do, practise
30. σώζω	σώσω	ἔσωσα	σεσωκα	σεσωσομαι	ἔσωθην	save
31. τιθένω	τεξομαι	έτεκον			έτεχθην	bring forth
32. τρέφω		ἐτρέφα		τεθραμμαι	ἐτραφην	child nurture
33. τυγχάνω	τευξομαι	ἐτυχον				happen
34. φεύγω	φευξομαι	ἔφυγον				flee

LIST OF VERBS (continued)

PRESENT ACTIVE	FUTURE ACTIVE	AORIST ACTIVE	PERFECT ACTIVE	PERFECT PASSIVE	AORIST PASSIVE	MEANING
GROUP II—LIQUID VERBS (STEMS IN λ, ν, ρ)						
35. ἀγγελλω	ἀγγελω	ἤγγειλα		ἤγγελμαι	ἤγγελην	announce
36. βαλλω	βαλω	έβαλον	βεβληκα	βεβλημαι	έβληθην	throw
37. στέλλω	στελω	έσταλα	έσταλκα	έσταλμαι	έσταλην	send
38. ἀποκτείνω	ἀποκτενω	ἀπεκτεινα			ἀπεκτανθην	kill
39. κερδαίνω	{ κερδανω κερδησω	{ κερδανα έκερδησα				gain
40. κλίνω	κλινω	έκλινα	κεκλικα		έκλιθην	lean
41. κρινω	κρινω	έκρινα	κεκρικα	κεκριμαι	έκριθην	judge
42. μένω	μενω	έμεινα	μεμενηκα			remain
43. φαινω					έφανην	show forth
44. αἴρω	άρω	ήρα	ήρακα	ήρμαι	ήρθην	take away
45. ἐγείρω	έγερω	ήγειρα		έγηγεμαι	ήγερθην	rouse, raise
46. σπείρω	σπερω	έσπειρα		έσπαρμαι	έσπαρην	sow
47. φθείρω	φθερω	έφθειρα			έφθαρην	destroy
48. χαιρώ	χαρησομαι				έχαρην	rejoice
(Note: All Future Active except χαρησομαι are contracted endings.)						
GROUP III—DEPONENT VERBS						
49. ἀποκρινόμαι		ἀπεκρινάμην			ἀπεκριθην	answer
50. ἀρχομαι	ἀρξομαι	ήρξαμην				begin
51. βούλομαι	βουληθησομαι				{ έβουληθην ήβουληθην	wish
52. γίνομαι	γενησομαι	έγενομην	γεγονα	γεγενημαι	έγενηθην	become
53. δεχομαι	δεξομαι	έδεξαμην		δεδεγμαι	έδεχθην	receive
54. δυνάμην	δυνησομαι				ήδυνηθην	be able
55. θεάομαι		έθεασαμην		τεθεαμαι		behold
56. ίαομαι		ίασαμην			ίαθην	heal
57. φοβέομαι	φοβηθησομαι				έφοβηθην	fear
(Note: All meanings are Active, whether forms are Middle or Passive, except ίαθην and έδεχθην which are Passive.)						
GROUP IV—CONTRACTED VERBS						
58. τιμάω	τιμησω	έτιμησα	τετιμηκα	τετιμημαι	έτιμηθην	honour
(Most -aw verbs follow this pattern: the chief exceptions are:)						
59. έάω	έασω	είασα				allow
60. ζάω	{ ζησω ζησομαι	έζησα				live
61. πεινάω	πεινασω	έπεινασα				hunger
62. ποιέω	ποιησω	έποιησα	πεποιηκα	πεποιημαι	έποιηθην	make, do
(Most -ew verbs follow this pattern: the chief exceptions are:)						
63. δοκέω		έδοξα				seem
64. κάλεω	καλεσω	έκαλεσα	κεκληκα	κεκλημαι	έκληθην	call
65. τέλεω	τελεσω	έτελεσα	τετελεκα	τετελεσμαι	έτελεσθην	complete
66. πληρώω	πληρωσω	έπληρωσα	πεπληρωκα	πεπληρωμαι	έπληρωθην	fill
(All -ow verbs follow this pattern.)						
GROUP V—VERBS IN -μι						
67. ἀπολλύμι	ἀπολεσω	{ ἀπωλεσα ἀπολωμην*	ἀπολωλα*			destroy
68. ἀφίημι	ἀφησω	ἀφηκα		ἀφεινται (3rd plural)	ἀφεθην	forgive, let go, allow

* In Passive sense—"perish"

LIST OF VERBS (*continued*)

PRESENT ACTIVE	FUTURE ACTIVE	AORIST ACTIVE	PERFECT ACTIVE	PERFECT PASSIVE	AORIST PASSIVE	MEANING
69. δεικνυμι } δεικνυω }	δειξω	ἔδειξα				show
70. δίδωμι	δώσω	ἔδωκα	δεδωκα	δεδομαι	ἔδοθην	give
71. εἶμι	ἔσομαι	ἦν (Impf.)				be
72. ἵστημι	στήσω	{ ἔστησα ἔστην	ἔστηκα	ἔσταμαι	ἔσταθην	cause to stand
73. τίθημι	θήσω	ἔθηκα	τεθεικα	τεθειμαι	ἔτεθην	place
74. φημι		ἔφην (Impf.)				say

GROUP VI—DEFECTIVE VERBS

75. ἀναίρω	ἀνελω	ἀνείλων			ἀνήρεθην	take up, kill
76. ἔρχομαι	ἔλενσομαι	{ ἦλθον ἦλθα	ἔληλυθα			come, go
77. ἐσθίω	φαγομαι	ἔφαγον				eat
78. ἔχω	ἔξω	ἔσχον	ἔσχηκα			have
79. λέγω	{ λεξω ἔρω	{ ἔλεξα εἶπον εἶπα	εἶρηκα	{ λελεγμαι εἶρημαι	{ ἔλεχθην ἔρρηθην ἔρρημαι	say
80. ὄραω	ὄφομαι	εἶδον	{ ἑώρακα ἑώρακα		ὠφθην	see
81. πασχω		ἐπαθον	πεπονθα			suffer
82. τρέχω		ἔδραμον				run
83. φέρω	οἰσω	{ ἤνεγκον ἤνεγκα	ἐνηνοχα		ἠνεχθην	carry

KEY TO EXERCISES

Ia

1. The man is good.
2. The good teacher writes the words.
3. The girl sees the face of the bad man (the bad man's face).
4. The brother snatches the slave's garment.
5. God watches over the world.
(God is reckoned as a proper name and therefore has article.)
6. The word of the scripture (writing) is good.
7. The book is in the bag.
8. The man is sitting on the chair.

Ib

1. ἡ κορη ἐστὶν ἀγαθὴ.
2. ὁ κακὸς ἄνθρωπος βλέπει τὴν ἀγαθὴν κορὴν.
3. τὸ τοῦ διδασκαλοῦ βιβλίον ἐστὶν ἀγαθόν.
4. ἡ κορη λέγει λόγον τῷ ἀδελφῷ.
5. ἄνθρωπε, ὁ θεὸς ἐστὶν ἀγαθός.

II

neologism—a word which is newly-coined.

economy—(the first diphthong becomes “oe” in Latin, then in English shortens to “e”).

tyrant—(not originally in a bad sense, but since autocratic rule corrupts it tended to collect a bad sense).

democracy—the rule of the people.

cryptograph—something written in a secret code.

angel—(originally any messenger, but the New Testament usage confined it to heavenly messengers later).

idol—an image of the god or goddess.

hymn—

hierarchy—an arrangement of priestly rulers (though it is now often used for any system of rulers).
monarchy—the rule of one man.
Mesopotamia—the land between the Tigris and Euphrates.
throne—
theology—talking about God.
macrocosm—the universe as a whole (we also use “microcosm”).
homoeopathy—the treatment of disease by like things.
zoology—the science of animals.
orthodoxy—going according to the right opinion.
philosophy—the love of wisdom.
autograph—that which a man writes himself.
palaeography—the study of ancient writing.
Philadelphia—the city of brotherly love.
aristocracy—the rule of the best people.
chlorophyll—the substance which makes leaves green.
microscope—the instrument for looking at the very small.
anemometer—the instrument for measuring the wind.
biology—the science of life.
microphone—a means of making a small sound into a big one.
cycle—(this is an interesting example of transliteration).
megaphone—an instrument for making a big sound.

Sentences from Greek authors in Lesson V

1. A big book is a big evil.
2. The unexamined life is not livable for man.
3. Man is a political animal.
(Aristotle meant the kind of animal who lives in cities.)
4. The friend is another self.
5. Time educates the wise.
6. In the beginning was the Word and the Word was with God and the Word was God.
7. I am the Alpha and the Omega, the beginning and the ending, the first and the last.

IIIa

1. The tree is good.
2. God loves the good (men).
3. The children were in the river.
4. The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom.
5. The people do not keep the word of God.

(In English "people" is treated as a plural, but in Greek *λαος* is a collective noun, grammatically singular.)

IIIb

6. τα δαιμονια εστιν εν τω κοσμο.
7. ο αποστολος βλεπει τα των παιδιων βιβλια.
8. ο βιος (η ζωη) των ανθρωπων εστιν αγαθος (αγαθη).
9. ο θανατος εστι κυριος των ανθρωπων.
(θανατος and ανθρωπων are both nouns referring to a class, therefore have the article.)
10. το παιδιον εστιν εν τω πλοιω.

IVa

1. The tongue is the cause of many evils.
(This is a line of poetry, therefore *πολλων* is changed in the order to fit in with the rhythm.)
2. Life is short, art is long.
(The verb "to be" is often omitted in Greek when it merely serves to join a subject and predicate.)
3. The good friend is a physician of grief.
(Note inversion of order for poetry.)
4. God is love and he who remains in love remains in God, and God in him.
5. Righteousness and truth and love are in the kingdom of God.
(Abstract nouns take an article.)

IVb

6. η ειρηνη του θεου τηρει τας ψυχας εν τη γη.
(θεου and γη both refer to a class, since each of them is unique, therefore they have the article.)

7. ὁ θεὸς βλέπει τὴν λύπην τῶν καρδιῶν τῶν ἀνθρώπων καὶ σώζει αὐτούς.
8. ὁ κόσμος ἐστὶν ἐν τῇ ἁμαρτίᾳ καὶ οὐκ ἔχει τὴν ἀγαπὴν.
9. ὁ ἀποστολὸς γράφει τὰς γράφας.
10. ἡ φωνὴ τοῦ κυρίου λαλεῖ λόγους τῆς ἀληθείας.

Va

1. Beloved, I am not writing to you a new commandment, but an old commandment.
2. The old commandment is the word which you heard.
3. Children, it is the last hour.
4. In this are clear the children of God and the children of the devil.
5. His commandment is eternal life.
6. The man is not from God because he does not keep the Sabbath.
7. I am the way and the truth and the life.
8. Many first shall be last, and the last first.
9. The end of the commandment is love out of a pure heart.
10. God rested on the seventh day from all his works.

Vb

ὁ βίος ληστοῦ . . . ἀγαπὴν . . . δοξάν . . . ἐν τῇ καρδίᾳ αὐτοῦ . . . τὴν λύπην . . . ἔχει τεχνὴν . . . ἐν τῷ ἔργῳ αὐτοῦ . . . ληστῆς . . . τελωνῆν . . . ὁ ἀνθρώπος . . . πηρᾶν . . . ἐν τῇ πηρᾷ . . . χρυσὸς . . . ὁ ληστῆς . . . ὁ ἄλλος ἀνθρώπος . . . ὁ τελωνῆς . . . τὴν κεφαλὴν . . . τὸν ληστὴν . . . τὸν χρυσὸν . . . χαρτὴν . . . ὁ νόμος . . . ἡ τεχνὴ . . . τὸν χρυσὸν, δεσποτα.

VI

When a man says that he is good, I know that he is a liar. Sin remains in men and we do not find a good man in the world. When men judge others, they say that the students do not learn, the friends of the doctors die, the

tax-collectors steal. If you listen to the critics, you believe that there is no man just and worthy of glory. God is good, men are wicked and hypocrites. They take the things of others, they eat and drink. But God knows the sins of men and saves them. Men die in their sins, but God raises the dead; if we believe, we have salvation.

(Note in the last sentence—"their sins"; since it is clear from the context whose sins are mentioned the article alone is used and "their" is not expressed in Greek.)

VIIa

On the seventh day we shall lead the children to the trees, and we shall teach them the mysteries of the earth. They will see the fruits and the leaves. In the fields the slaves will guard the flocks and the good slave will save them from the robbers.

VIIb

ἐν τῇ ἔσχατῇ ἡμέρᾳ ὁ κριτὴς τοῦ κόσμου καθίσει ἐν τοῖς οὐρανοῖς καὶ οἱ ἄγγελοι ἀξοῦσι τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. ἀκουσεῖς τὸν λόγον τῶν ἁμαρτιῶν σου καὶ βλεψεῖς τὴν δικαιοσύνην τοῦ θεοῦ. σωσεῖ σε ἀπὸ τῆς ἀπωλείας καὶ ἐλεήσει σε. οὐδεὶς ἀξίος ἐστὶ τῆς ἀγαπῆς αὐτοῦ ἀλλὰ βλεπομένῃ τὴν δόξαν αὐτοῦ καὶ πιστευσόμεν εἰς αὐτόν.

VIIIa

Happy is the man who keeps the commandments of God; he will save his soul in the last day. But he who does not keep (them) will see the wrath of God. For we know that the angels will write the works of men in the book of life. God will judge the world according to their works and will send men to their reward. He will send the good to life and the bad to destruction.

VIIIb

ὁ διδασκαλὸς διδάξει τοὺς μαθητὰς τὴν ἀλήθειαν (note: διδασκω takes a double accusative, of the person and the

thing), ἀλλὰ οἱ μαθηταὶ οὐκ ἀκουσοῦσι. ἐπιθυμησοῦσι τὴν σοφίαν, ἀλλ' οὐ ποιησοῦσι τὰ ἔργα τῆς σοφίας. τότε ὁ διδασκαλὸς λέξει, “ζητήσετε με, ἀλλ' οὐκ ἄξω ὑμᾶς πρὸς τὴν σοφίαν”. οἱ λόγοι τοῦ διδασκαλοῦ μενοῦσιν ἐν ταῖς καρδίαις τῶν πονηρῶν μαθητῶν καὶ μαρτυρησοῦσιν αὐτοῖς.

IXa

1. Men have hands and feet, but dogs only feet.
2. The lamps are shining in the hands of the daughters.
3. Here laid Philip his twelve-year-old son, Nikoteles, his great hope.

(Note: genitive case expresses age.)

4. Man is the measure of all things.
5. In the Nile are many crocodiles; the Egyptians do not kill them, thinking them sacred. During the winter months (accusative expressing duration of time) the crocodile does not eat anything, and spends most of the day on the land, and the night in the river; for the water is warmer than the air. The crocodile has the eyes of a pig, but big teeth in proportion to its body. It is the only one of the animals which has not a tongue, nor does it move the lower jaw. The others run away from it, but the wagtail is at peace. For the crocodile in the river has its mouth full of leeches, but coming out on the land opens its mouth and the wagtail enters it and eats up the leeches; and the crocodile does not injure it.

(This passage is slightly modified from Herodotus, the earliest Greek historian.)

IXb

παῖς ἔστι θαυμαστον ζῶον. ὅτε μικρὸς ἔστι βλέπει δράματα ἔλπίδος καὶ γινώσκει ὅτι ποιήσει ἀγαθὰ (not χρημάτων because “things” is only general) ἐν τῷ κόσμῳ. ὅτε ἔστι μαθητῆς ἀναγινώσκει τὰ βιβλία καὶ μανθάνει πολλὰ. οἱ γονεῖς αὐτοῦ χαιροῦσιν ἐν τῇ σοφίᾳ αὐτοῦ, καὶ πιστεῦουσιν ὅτι ζητήσει τὴν δόξαν ἐν τῷ κόσμῳ. ἡ λάμπα τῆς ἀληθείας λαμπεῖ ἐν τοῖς ὀφθαλμοῖς αὐτοῦ, καὶ τὰ ὦτα

ἀκουει την φωνην της γνωσεως. ἡγεμων ἐστι του ἀγωνος και το ὄνομα ἐν τοις στομασι των ἀνθρωπων. ὅτε εὕρισκει γυναικα καταλειπει τον πατερα και την μητερα και τηρει αὐτην. φυλασσει την εἰκονα αὐτης ἐν τη καρδια και χαιρει ἐν τη χαριτι αὐτης. ἡ δυναμις του σωματος ἐστιν ἰσχυρα, ἀλλ' οὐ μενει, και το τέλος ἀνθρωπου ἐγγιζει. αἱ τριχες (νοτ ἡ θριξ, which would mean only one hair!) εἰσι λευκαι, οὐκ ἔχει ὀδοντας και ἡ φλοξ του πνευματος ἀποθνησκει ἐν τῷ σκοτει.

Χα. The Governor

The governor was a true gentleman (καλος και ἀγαθος, or καλος κάγαθος was the classical Greek definition of a gentleman). He did not keep his money in his own hands, but helped the students. His father's mother received five pieces of silver monthly from the preachers in the city, and the preachers taught his father freely. Therefore the governor said that they were the saviours of his father and honoured them. In the assembly of the people he witnessed to his faith, and demanded freedom for the Christians. For five years he governed the province and all men loved and honoured him. His name was in the mouths of the common people (lit. the crowd) and his end filled them with grief.

Χβ

οἱ γονεις ἐπεμψαν τον παιδα εἰς την πολιν ὅτι οὐκ ἦν ἔργον ἐν τῷ ἀμπελωνι. ἐν τη χειρι αὐτου ἦν ὀλιγον ἀργυριον (ὀλιγα χρηματα), και ἐν τη καρδια ἔλπις. περιεπατησε παρα την ὁδον νυκτος (genitive of "time within which" a thing happens) και εἶδε (ἔβλεψε) τους ἀστερας ἐν τοις οὐρανοις. ἐν τη πολει ἔζητησε τον οἶκον ἱερεως και ἦτησεν βρωμα, ἀλλ' ὁ ἱερευς οὐκ ἐβοηθησεν αὐτῷ. οἱ κυνες ἐφωνησαν και ἤρπασαν το ἱματιον αὐτου, ἀλλ' ἔτυψε τα στοματα αὐτων και ἐσιωπησαν. ἐν ἑτέρῳ οἴκῳ εἶδε την φλογα πυρος και λαμπαδα παρα εἰκονι, και ἦτησεν ἄρτον και ὕδωρ. ἤκουσε την φωνην γυναικος ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ και αὐτη εἶπεν τη θυγατρι, "δος ἄρτον τῷ παιδι".

XIa. A Fable of Aesop

A dog which was carrying meat, was crossing a river. When he saw his own shadow in the water he thought that it was another dog and it had the meat (note tenses of original). Therefore he threw away his own meat and snatched that of the other, so that he lost both. For the one did not exist and the other fell into the river.

XIb

ὁ βασιλεὺς ἦλθεν εἰς ἕτεραν πόλιν καὶ κατέλιπε τὰ χρήματα ἐν ταῖς χερσὶ τῶν δούλων. ὁ μὲν δούλος ἔλαβε δεκά ταλάντα, ὁ δὲ πεντε, ὁ δὲ δυο. ὁ βασιλεὺς ἔμεινε ἐν τῇ ἑτέρᾳ πόλει ἕξ μηνῶν καὶ τότε ὑπήγαγε πρὸς τὸν οἶκον. ἐφώνησε (ἐκάλεσε) τοὺς δούλους οἱ ἦλθον καὶ ἠνεγκον τὰ ταλάντα. ὁ πρῶτος δούλος εἶπε, “ ἴδου, ἔλαβον δεκά ταλάντα καὶ νῦν ἔχω εἴκοσι ”. ὁ δευτερός εἶπε, “ ἴδου, ἔλαβον πεντε ταλάντα καὶ νῦν ἔχω δεκά ”. ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐτίμησε τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς δούλους οἱ ἀνεγκον τὰ χρήματα. ὁ τρίτος δούλος εἶπε, “ ἐγνων ὅτι ὁ βασιλεὺς ἔχει πολλὰ χρήματα, ὥστε ἐφαγον καὶ ἐπιον καὶ νῦν οὐδὲν ἔχω ”. ὁ βασιλεὺς εἶπε, “ πονηρὲ δουλε, ὅς οὐκ ἔμαθες σοφίαν ” καὶ ἔξεβαλεν αὐτὸν ἔξω τῆς πόλεως.

XIIa

It is good for a man to eat and drink because he received his body from God. It is good to seek after wisdom, because the wise man knows the mysteries of the world. If you wish to know the truth you must ask God to help you (lit. “ it is necessary you to ask ”—note this construction very carefully, and do not try to make a personal verb—it is impersonal, and never has a personal subject, but always the accusative and infinitive). Man is not able to find righteousness in the world. He wishes to do good but does not wish to keep the commandments of God. He wishes to know the truth but does not wish to leave his own thoughts and to do the will of God. The will of God is good, and to do it is life for men (dative expresses

person for whom it is an advantage). Sin remains in men so that they die. But the love of God saves them, so that they enter into his kingdom.

XIIb

εί θελεις ποιειν αγαθον, δει τηρειν τας εντολας του θεου και η πρωτη εντολη εστι φιλειν τους ανθρωπους. ο Ιησους ειπεν παραβολην περι αγαπης. ειπεν οτι φιλειν ανθρωπους εστι βοηθησαι αυτοις. ο ιερευς και ο Λευιτης ουκ ηβηλησαν βοηθησαι τω ανθρωπω, αλλα ο Σαμαρειτης ηνεγκεν αυτον προς το πανδοχειον και ειπε τω πανδοχει θεραπευειν αυτον. το θελημα του Σαμαρειτου ην αγαθον ποιειν τω ανθρωπω και ουτως ετηρησε τας εντολας του θεου.

XIIIa

There was a man in Babylon and his name was Joachim. And he took a wife whose name was Susanna, the daughter of Hilkiah, beautiful and reverencing the Lord. And her parents were righteous and taught their daughter according to the law of Moses. And two elders, coming into the house of Joachim and seeing his wife walking in her husband's garden, and desiring her, turned their eyes to do evil. And the woman came into the garden and the two elders were looking at her.

(Note the sentences beginning with και which is an import from the Hebrew original.)

XIIIb

οι πονηροι πρεσβυτεροι ελθοντες εις την εκκλησιαν ειπον οτι η γυνη ην λεγουσα μετα νεανιου, αυτοι δε εκβαλοντες αυτον εκ του παραδεισου εκρατησαν αυτην. ακουων τους λογους των πρεσβυτερων ο λαος κατεκρινε την Σουσανναν αποθανειν, ο δε Δανιηλ αναπηδησας εβοησε, "εγω ειμι αθωος του αιματος της γυναικος". τοτε εκελευσε τον πρωτον πρεσβυτερον λεγειν οπου η γυνη ην λαλουσα μετα του νεανιου, και ειπεν, "υπο συκη". τοτε ηρωτησε τον δευτερον πρεσβυτερον, και ειπεν αυτω "υπο ελαια". ο δε

Δανιηλ ἀκουσας εἶπεν “ οἱ δυο πρεσβυτεροι λεγουσι ψευδη ”,
και οὕτως ἐσωσε την γυναικα.

XIVa

1. Jesus says to him, “ Because you have seen me, have you believed? Blessed are those who did not see and believed ”.
2. Now that I have become a man I have put away childish things.
3. I have not injured the Jews, as you well know.
4. Temptation has not seized you except on a human scale.
5. For God has spoken through the mouth of the prophets.
6. He brought Greeks into the temple and has defiled the holy place.
7. And going away to the house she saw the devil gone out of the child
8. The kingdom of heaven has come near.
9. What I have written, I have written
10. Lord, in thee have we trusted

XIVb

1. καλως μεμαθηκα τους λογους.
2. οτε γεγονας ἀνηρ, δει σε διδαξαι τους ἄλλους.
3. ὁ κυριος εἶρηκε κακα περι σου.
4. εἶρηκα ὑμιν τους λογους της ἀληθειας ἄλλα ὑμεις οὐ πεπιστευκατε.
5. ὁ ἑωρακαμεν και ἀκηκοαμεν, ἀπαγγελλομεν ὑμιν.
- 6 το δαιμονιον (πονηρον πνευμα) εἶληφε τον παιδα.
7. πεπληρωκατε την Ἱερουσαλημ (indeclinable) της διδαχης ὑμων (verbs of filling are followed by genitive of the object concerned)
8. ὁ διδασκαλος ἐήλθυθε και δει τους μαθητας ἀκουσαι αὐτον.

XVa

For ten years the Greeks fought about Troy, and Agamemnon and Achilles, who were leaders of the Greeks,

differed about a girl. How this happened you shall immediately hear. Chryses, the priest of Apollo, wished to get back his girl, whom Agamemnon took, but Agamemnon did not accept his gifts and said, "We Greeks do not fight for nothing; if we win a girl, we do not send her back". So Apollo was angry with the Greeks, so that he came by night and destroyed many. Calchas the prophet said, "You, Agamemnon, did not accept the gifts, nor release the daughter of the priest. If you will send her back, all will be well". Therefore Agamemnon said, "I will send back the girl and will take Briseis, Achilles' girl". So, according to Homer, began the wrath of Achilles.

XVb

ὅτε οἱ ἀποστολοὶ ἤρξαντο εὐαγγελίζεσθαι τοὺς Ἕλληνας, αὐτοὶ ἔδεξαντο μετὰ χαρᾶς. ὁ Παῦλος ἔλθων πρὸς Ἀθήνας ἐλάλησε τοῖς σοφοῖς ἐν τῷ Ἀρειοπαγῶ. τότε ἦλθεν πρὸς Κορινθὸν καὶ εἰργασάτο μετὰ Ἀκυλοῦ. ἡ πόλις τῆς Κορινθοῦ ἦν πονηρὰ ἀλλὰ πολλοὶ τῶν Κορινθίων ἐπίστευσαν. ὁ Παῦλος ἐδύνατο πείθειν αὐτοὺς ἀκολουθεῖν τῷ κυρίῳ, καὶ ὑπήκουον τοῖς λόγοις αὐτοῦ. ἐνεδύσαντο τὸ πνεῦμα τῆς δικαιοσύνης καὶ ἐβαπτίσαντο ἐν τῷ ὀνόματι τοῦ κυρίου.

XVIa

There was once a man who was sent by the king into another city, and as he was going along the road he was seized by robbers. The man was angry and said, "I am the king's messenger, and you will be pursued and punished by the king". The robbers, hearing this, were afraid and began to discuss with one another. One said "The king will come and seize us and we shall be thrown into prison". But the other said in reply (lit. "answering said"), "We shall release the messenger and run away, so that we shall not be caught". But the leader said, "Why are you discussing amongst yourselves? When the messenger is dead

he will not be able to report the matter to the king, and a corpse which has been hidden will not be found”.

XVIb

ὅτε οἱ μαθηταὶ συνήλθον ἐν τῇ Πεντηκοστῇ ἡμέρᾳ, ἦχος ἤκουσθη ὡς βιαίου πνεύματος, καὶ ὅλος ὁ οἶκος οὐ ἦσαν καθήμενοι ἐπληρωθῆ. καὶ ὠφθῆσαν γλῶσσαι ὡς πυρός καὶ ἐπληρωθῆσαν πνεύματος ἁγίου, καὶ ἤρξαντο λαλεῖν ἑτέραις γλῶσσαις. οἱ λόγοι ἤκουσθησαν ὑπο τοῦ λαοῦ καὶ ἐφοβήθησαν ὅτι εἶδον τὸ δράμα (note: although λαός is singular the following verbs may be general plural as in English, since λαός is not the grammatical subject). τότε ὁ Πέτρος ἀποκριθεὶς εἶπεν αὐτοῖς, “τοῦτο ἐγενετο τῇ δυνάμει τοῦ θεοῦ. ὁ Ἰησοῦς ὁ Ναζωραῖος ἐσταυρωθῆ ὑφ’ ὑμῶν, ἀλλὰ ὑψώθη (augment absorbed in υ) ὑπο τοῦ θεοῦ, καὶ ἐν τῷ ὀνόματι αὐτοῦ τὸ Ἅγιον Πνεῦμα ἐλήλυθε”.

XVIIa

Jesus said to his disciples, “Let us go elsewhere, into the other villages, so that I may preach there also. Whoever receives me, receives my Father. For the Son of Man did not come to judge the world but that the world might be saved through him. But the world will never believe on me until I come on the clouds of heaven”. The disciples said in reply, “Lord, what shall we do? If the crowds do not hear your words, how will they hear ours?” Jesus said, “Wherever you preach the gospel, do not be afraid that men will kill you, for I am with you for ever” (lit. “to the age”).

XVIIb

ὁ Παῦλος ἐγράψεν ἐν τῇ ἐπιστολῇ, τι οὖν ποιήσωμεν; μενώμεν ἐν ἁμαρτίᾳ, ἵνα ἡ χάρις περισσεύῃ; ἀλλ’ ὃς ἂν βλεψῇ τὴν ἀγαπὴν τοῦ θεοῦ οὐ δύναται ἁμαρτεῖν, καὶ ὃς ἂν ἁμαρτῆ οὐ μὴ εἰσελθῆ εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν τῶν οὐρανῶν. ὁ Ἰησοῦς ἦλθεν ἵνα ἐχωμεν ζωὴν, καὶ ἵνα βοηθώμεν ἀλλήλοις. τηρώμεν τὰς ἐντολάς αὐτοῦ ἕως ἂν ἴδωμεν αὐτὸν ἐν τῇ

δοξη αὐτου. ἡ ἐλπις ἡμῶν ἐστὶν ἐν αὐτῷ ὥστε μὴ φοβηθῆναι μὴ καταλιπῆ ἡμᾶς. ὅταν εἰσελθῶμεν εἰς πειρασμον δυναμεθα εἶπειν αὐτῷ, κυριε, μὴ ἀποστρεψῆς ἀπο τοῦ λαοῦ σου.

XVIIIa

In the world it is clear that if anyone shouts he is honoured; but if anyone humbles himself, his glory is not manifested. A doctor treats and heals the poor, but no one loves him. But if he seeks the opinion of men and exalts his own wisdom, all men honour him and his house is filled. Do you not see that those who speak many words are called wise? Let us be glad therefore, and filled with joy that in heaven those who have been humbled will be exalted, and those who exalted themselves will be humbled. Man is not justified by his own wisdom, but by the love of God. The gospel witnesses that Jesus was crucified so that men might be justified, and so that in the last day he might save those who love him.

XVIIIb

ὁ Ἰησοῦς εἶπεν, ἐὰν ἀγαπατε με, τηρησετε τὰς ἐντολάς μου. ἀλλ' εἰ θεωροῦμεν τὸν κόσμον, ὄρωμεν ὅτι οἱ ἄνθρωποι οὐ ποιοῦσι τοῦτο. ἐπιθυμοῦσι τῆς σωτηρίας, ἀλλ' οὐ θελοῦσι ταπεινῶν ἑαυτοῦς (ταπεινοῦσθαι). πεπληρωμένοι εἰσι τῆς πονηρίας καὶ λατρενοῦσι τὰ εἰδῶλα. αἰτησωμεν, τίς δικαιοῦνται τοῖς ἔργοις αὐτοῦ; αἱ γραφαὶ μαρτυροῦσιν ὅτι οὐδεὶς ἐστὶ δικαίος. δεῖ τὸν ἄνθρωπον σιωπᾶν ὅτε ὁ θεὸς λαλεῖ ἵνα φανεροὶ τὴν ἀληθειαν αὐτοῦ. ὅτε γεννᾶται εἰς τὸν κόσμον ἕα τὴν ἁμαρτιαν κρατησαὶ αὐτὸν καὶ ἀγαπᾶ τὴν ἰδίαν δόξαν, καὶ ὕψοι ἑαυτὸν. αἰτῶμεν τὸν θεὸν ἵασθαι τὴν ἁμαρτιαν ἡμῶν καὶ φανεροῦν τὴν δόξαν αὐτοῦ ἐν ἡμῖν ἵνα ἀγαλλιωμεθα ἐν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τοῦ κυρίου.

XIXa

A householder wished to go into another city and standing his servants in front of him he gave to them money

in order that they might work until he came. The servants stood and said to one another "What shall we do?" One said, "Let us buy sheep, so that we may sell the lambs and get money". But the other standing by the side said, "I will put my money in the bank, so that I may not lose it". The householder came and told them to render account. The one received five pieces of silver and deposited with his master ten; and the master said, "You have done well, I will set you up as ruler of the household". The other received two pieces of silver and repaid the two, and the master said in anger, "I know that you are a bad servant", and handed him over to the officers, so that he should be thrown into prison.

XIXb

ὁ Κύριος εἶπεν, ὅς ἂν ἔχη, αὐτῷ δοθησεται. εἰ θελομεν δεχεσθαι τὴν χάριν αὐτοῦ δεῖ ἡμᾶς δουναι αὐτῷ τὴν ἀγαπὴν ἡμῶν. ἔθηκεν ἡμᾶς ἐν τῷ κόσμῳ ἵνα ποιησωμεν τὰ ἔργα αὐτοῦ, καὶ ἔαν ποιωμεν τὸ θελημα αὐτοῦ ἀναστησει ἡμᾶς ἐν τῇ ἔσχατῃ ἡμερᾷ. οἶδεν ὅτι ἔσμεν ἁμαρτωλοὶ, ἀλλ' ἀφησει τὰ ἁμαρτηματα ἡμῶν καὶ παραστησει ἡμᾶς ἐνώπιον τοῦ πατρὸς ὡς ἁγίους. δωμεν αὐτῷ τὴν ἀγαπὴν ἡμῶν ἵνα εἰδωμεν τὸ θελημα αὐτοῦ καὶ ποιησωμεν αὐτο. οὐχ ὡς Ἰουδᾶς προεδωκεν αὐτὸν τοῖς ἀρχιερεῦσι καὶ ἀπέδοτο τὸν δεσποτὴν αὐτοῦ, ἀλλ' ὡς οἱ μαρτυρὲς ἔθηκαν τὰς ψυχὰς ὑπερ αὐτοῦ. λαβωμεν τὸ πανοπλιον τοῦ θεοῦ ἵνα στωμεν ἐν τῇ πονηρᾷ ἡμερᾷ καὶ μὴ ἀποσταθωμεν ἀπ' αὐτοῦ.

XXa

Now I shall give you commands, you observe them.

Students, stand up—sit down.

First student, give me the book—take it.

Second student, write your name.

Third student, lift your hand—put it on the table.

Fourth and fifth students, go out of the room.

Sixth student, bring them into the room.

Seventh student, tell them to sit down.

Eighth student, touch your face.

Ninth student, stop sitting down, stand up.

Tenth student, tell him to sit down.

XXb

ἐγειρεσθε πρωῖ.

λουσασθε ὕδατι.

μη μενετε ἐν τη κλινη μακρον χρονον.

ἀκουετε τον διδασκαλον και μη κοιμηθητε ἐν τη σχολη.

γραφατε τους σοφους λογους του διδασκαλου.

ἀποκρινασθε προς τα ἐρωτηματα του διδασκαλου ταχεως.

ἀναγινωσκετε τα βιβλια και τηρειτε τους λογους αὐτων
ἐν ταις καρδιαις ὑμων.

μη πανεσθε εὐχεσθαι.

Examples from Greek poets in Lesson XX

1. All are kinsmen of the prosperous.
2. He who is ignorant of letters looks but does not see.
3. The wise learn many things from their enemies.
4. Evil communications corrupt good manners.
(But it is not certain whether Paul intended it to be poetry or not!)
5. If God is willing, all things become possible.
(This is a genitive absolute—see Lesson XXVI.)
6. For somehow there is this disease in tyranny—not to trust one's friends.
7. The body is mortal, but the soul immortal.

XXIa

Everyone says that man must do good, but everyone does not do it. Their word is true, but their actions false. For man is foolish and full of all kinds of injustice. Although he wishes to do good he practises evil, and his will is weak. Those who love the true love something great, but it is impossible always to speak the truth.

XXIb

ἡ ἀγάπη ἐστὶ μεγάλη καὶ ἀγαθὴ, καὶ οἱ ζητούντες τὴν ἀγαπὴν εὐρησοῦσι τὴν ἀληθὴν χαρὰν. οἱ ἀφρονες εἰσι πληρεῖς τῆς ἀδικίας, καὶ οὐ ζητοῦσιν ἀγαθὰ. πάντες αὐτοὶ λεγοῦσι ψευδῆ, καὶ τὰ ἔργα πάντα πονηρὰ. εἰ ἄνθρωπος θελεῖ λεγεῖν τὰ ἀληθῆ καὶ ποιεῖν τὰ ἀγαθὰ εὐρίσκει πολλὴν χαρὰν. ἀλλὰ οἱ ἄνθρωποι εἰσιν ἀσθενεῖς καὶ ἀπειροὶ τῆς δικαιοσύνης. πολλοὶ θελοῦσι ποιεῖν μεγάλα ἐν τῷ κόσμῳ καὶ λαβεῖν ζωὴν αἰώνιον, ἀλλὰ πλανῶνται. ἀδύνατον ἐστὶν ἄνθρωπον ἀσθενῆ ποιῆσαι τὸ ἀληθές τῇ δὲ χαρίτι τοῦ θεοῦ πάντα δυνάτα.

XXIIa

1. It is better to be silent than to speak in vain.
2. No law is stronger than necessity.
3. Second thoughts are somehow wiser.
4. He who does most, sins most, amongst mortal men.
5. There is one man worse, another better, for the same work; but no one of men is himself wise for all things.
6. There was an oracle of Apollo in Delphi:
Sophocles is wise, Euripides wiser
But of all men the wisest is Socrates.
7. Half is more than the whole, as Hesiod says.
8. Water is best, as Pindar says.
9. The last error shall be worse than the first.
10. Be a slave freely—you will not be a slave.

XXIIb

ἀληθῶς ἡ ἀγάπη ἐστὶ τὸ μεγίστον δῶρον τοῦ θεοῦ ἀνθρώποις. ἡ σοφία ἀγαθὴ ἀλλ' ἡ ἀγάπη κρείσσων. ὁ φίλων ἰσχυροτέρος ἐστὶ τοῦ ἐχθροῦ (ἢ ὁ ἐχθρός), ὅτι μαλιστα δύνανται ἀφίεναι τὰς ἁμαρτίας. τὸ ἀγαπᾶν μείζων ἐστὶ τοῦ φιλεῖν (see Lesson XXV). ὁ φίλος ζητεῖ τὸ ἀγαθὸν τοῦ φίλου, ὁ δὲ ἀγαπῶν τιθῆσι τὴν ψυχὴν ὑπὲρ τοῦ ἀγαπητοῦ. ἡ ἀγάπη τοῦ Χριστοῦ μείζων ἐστὶ τῆς ἀγαπῆς πατρὸς. οἱ εὐρίσκοντες αὐτὴν εὐρίσκουσι χαρὰν καὶ εὐρίσκουσι περισσοτέρον.

XXIIIa

1. Who knows whether to live is to die, and to die is reckoned below as living?
2. To love God with one's whole heart and to love one's neighbour as oneself is more than all burnt-offerings and sacrifices.
3. Before some came from James, Peter was eating with the Gentiles.
4. After they became silent James answered.
5. You have not, because you do not ask.
6. Jesus came into the world in order that sinners might be saved.
7. Lord, come down, before my child dies.

XXIIIb

προ του ελθειν εις την πολιν δει αιτεισθαι (ερωταν) περι της οδου. μετα το ακουσαι σε τουτο, δυνασει οδον ποιειν εκει, αλλα εν τω πορευεσθαι μη λαλησης μηδενι. εαν τις λεγη σοι εισελθειν εις τον οικον αυτου μη ακουσης αυτου. κλεψει το αργυριον σου ωστε μη δυνασθαι σε αγορασαι αρτον. προ του αυτον αρπαζειν σε φνγε. ο σοφος ω πιστευει τοις μωροις (αφροσιν) οι λεγουσι πολυ αργυριον εινα εν τη πολει δια το γνωναι οτι αυτοι εισι μωροι (αφρονες). προς το λαβειν αργυριον, δει ανθρωπον εργαζεσθαι, δια το ειρηκεναι τον θεον τω Αδαμ οτι εν τω εργαζεσθαι δει φαγειν.

XXIVa

And as he was going along by the sea of Galilee he saw Simon and Andrew, Simon's brother, casting nets in the sea. And he said to them, "Come after me". And leaving their nets they went after Jesus. And as they were going along, John and James, the sons of Zebedee, were in the boat. Jesus called them as they were mending their nets. When their father Zebedee saw Jesus he released them and said, "I am not the one to prevent

you, if you wish to go with him". And after Jesus had gone into the synagogue he began to teach, and he was teaching them as one having authority. And when a man with an unclean spirit came, the Pharisees said, "What will he do?" But Jesus knew their discussions and said in reply, "Why are you questioning amongst yourselves, saying, 'What will he do?' Whilst I am in the world I must work the works of my Father." And he said to the man, "Get up and come to me". And as Jesus said "Come out of him", the demon convulsed him and came out.

XXIVb

ὁ Σαυλος ἔλθων πρὸς τὸν ἀρχιερεᾶ ἤτησατο ἀπ' αὐτοῦ ἐπιστολάς πρὸς Δαμασκόν. ἤθελησε γὰρ ἐξέλθων ἐκεῖ καὶ εὗρων τοὺς ὄντας τῆς ὁδοῦ ἀναγαγεῖν αὐτοὺς δεδεμένους πρὸς Ἱερουσαλήμ. καὶ ἐγγιζόντος αὐτοῦ πρὸς Δαμασκόν ἐξαιφνης αὐτὸν περιήστραψεν φῶς ἐκ τοῦ οὐρανοῦ. καὶ ἤκουσεν φωνὴν λεγούσαν αὐτῷ, Σαουλ, Σαουλ, τί με διώκεις; οἱ ὄντες μετ' αὐτοῦ ἀκούοντες τὴν φωνὴν ἐφοβήθησαν, καὶ μὴ βλέποντες μηδὲν εἶπον ὅτι ἄγγελος μετ' αὐτοῦ λαλεῖ. ὁ δὲ Σαυλος ἀκούσας τὴν φωνὴν ἔπεσεν ἐπὶ τὴν γῆν, καὶ τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν ἀνεωγμένων οὐδὲν ἑβλέπεν. τότε μαθητῆς τις, ὀνοματι Ἀνανίας, ἀκούσας ἀγγελίαν ἀπὸ τοῦ κυρίου, ἀναστὰς ἦλθεν πρὸς τὸν οἶκον οὗ ὁ Σαυλος ἔμενε. τοῦ δὲ Σαυλοῦ προσευχομένου, ὁ Ἀνανίας ἔλθων πρὸς τὸν οἶκον εἰσηλθεν. καὶ ἐπιθεὶς τὰς χεῖρας τῷ Σαυλῷ εἶπεν, ὁ Ἰησοῦς ὁ φανείς σοι ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ ἀπεστείλε με ἀνοίξαι τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς σου. καὶ ἐπιθεντος αὐτοῦ τὰς χεῖρας τῷ Σαυλῷ οἱ ὀφθαλμοὶ αὐτοῦ ἀνεωχθήσαν καὶ ἀνεβλέπεν.

XXVa

1. If I spoke wrongly, immediately I repented.
2. If you are the son of God, come down from the cross.
(Imperative for indicative in present simple condition.)

3. If the dead are not raised, neither is Christ risen.
(A clear indication that the primary reference of the perfect is to the present state.)

4. If you wish to enter into life, keep the commandments.

5. If the salt is spoiled, with what shall it be salted?

6. If you forgive men their faults, your heavenly Father will forgive you also.

(Note: *και* emphasizes *υμιν*.)

7. If this plan is of men, it will be destroyed.

8. If the householder had known in what watch the thief was coming, he would have stayed awake.

(Pluperfect for aorist in protasis.)

9. Lord, if you had been here, my brother would not have died.

(Commentators produce all kinds of weird and wonderful explanations about why in a large number of places, of which this is a sample, the imperfect of *ειμι* is found where an aorist would have been expected. Few seem to note the obvious point—there is no aorist of *ειμι*.)

10. (a) If you had known me, you would have known my Father also.

(b) If you knew me, you would know my Father also.

(The tense in both parts is a pluperfect, but *οιδα* is a defective verb, and the pluperfect is therefore usually equivalent to an imperfect. In sentence 8, however, the same tense is equivalent to an aorist, so it is grammatically possible to take it as either a past unfulfilled condition, or a present unfulfilled condition. You must decide from the context, but since here it is isolated, no decision is possible.)

11. If you were blind, you would not have sin.

12. If God were your father, you would love me.

XXVb

1. *ει η βασιλεια των ουρανων ην εντος υμων, ηδευτε αν την ειρηνην του θεου εν ταις καρδιαις.*

2. εἰ ἐποίησαμεν ταυτα, οὐκ ἂν ἦμεν ἀληθεις δουλοι του θεου.
(See note on sentence 9 above.)
3. ἐαν ὁ οἰκοδεσποτης εἶδη ποια φυλακη ὁ κλεπτης ἐρχεται, γρηγορησει.
4. ἐαν ἀγαπατε με, τηρησετε τας ἐντολας μου.
5. εἰ μη ὁ Ἰησους ἦλθεν προς την Ἱερουσαλημ, οὐκ ἂν ἐσταυρωθη.
6. εἰ μη ἡ δικαιοσυνη ὑμων πλεων ἐστι ἢ των Φαρισαιων, οὐ μη δυνηθητε σωθηναι.
7. εἰ ἦδεις το δωρον του θεου και τις ἐστιν ὁ αἰτουμενος ὑδωρ, ἦτεεις ἂν αὐτον και ἐδιδου ἂν σοι ὑδωρ ζων.
8. εἰ τι ἠδικησα, εἶπε μοι και μετανοησω.
9. εἰ ἀνθρωποις ἀρεσκω, οὐκ εἰμι δουλὸς Χριστου.
10. εἰ ἀληθως ἦσθα δικαιος, ἦδεις ἂν τουτο εἶναι ἁμαρτημα.

GREEK—ENGLISH VOCABULARY

- ἀγαθος—good
 ἀγαλλιασμαι—I rejoice greatly
 ἀγαπαω—I love
 ἀγαπη, -ης (f.)—love
 ἀγαπητος—beloved
 ἀγγελλω—I announce
 ἀγγελος, -ου (m.)—messenger
 ἅγιος—holy
 ἀγρος, -ου (m.)—field
 ἄγω—I lead
 ἄγων, -ωνος (m.)—contest, game
 ἀδελφος, -ου (m.)—brother
 ἀδικεω—I injure
 ἀδυνατος—impossible
 ἄει—always
 ἀθανατος—immortal
 ἄθως—innocent
 αἶθρη, -ερος (m.)—air
 αἷμα, -ατος (n.)—blood
 αἴρω—I lift
 αἰτεω—I ask
 αἰτια, -ας (f.)—cause
 αἰων, -ωνος (m.)—age
 αἰωνιος—eternal
 ἀκουω—I hear
 ἀκριβης—careful
 ἀκριβως—carefully
 ἅλας, -ατος (n.)—salt
 ἀληθεια, -ας (f.)—truth
 ἀληθης—true
 ἀλιζω—I salt
 ἀλλα—but
 ἀλλαχου—elsewhere
 ἀλληλους—one another
 ἄλλος—other
 ἁμαρτανω—I sin
 ἁμαρτημα, -ατος (n.)—sin
 ἁμαρτια, -ας (f.)—sin
 ἁμαρτωλος, -ου (m.)—sinner
 ἄμνος, -ου (m.)—lamb
 ἀμπελων, -ωνος (m.)—vineyard
 ἀμφιβαλλω—cast (nets)
 ἀμφοτεροι—both
 ἀναγγελλω—I announce
 ἀναγινωσκω—I read
 ἀναγκη, -ης (f.)—necessity
 ἀναπηδαιω—I jump up
 ἀναστασις, -εως (f.)—resurrection
 ἀναφερω—I bring back
 ἀνεμος, -ου (m.)—wind
 ἀνηρ, ἀνδρος (m.)—man
 ἀνθρωπος, -ου (m.)—man
 ἀνθρωπινος—human
 ἀνοιγω—I open
 ἀξιος—worthy
 ἀπειρος—unskilled
 ἀπο—from
 ἀποθνησκω—I die
 ἀποκρινομαι—I answer
 ἀποκτεινω—I kill
 ἀποστελλω—I send
 ἀποστολος, -ου (m.)—apostle
 ἀποστρεφω—I turn away
 ἀπτομαι—I touch
 ἀπωλεια, -ας (f.)—destruction
 ἀργος—lazy
 ἀργυριον, -ου (n.)—silver, money
 ἀριστερος—left (hand)
 ἀριστος—best
 ἀρπαζω—I snatch, seize
 ἄρτος, -ου (m.)—bread
 ἀρχιερεως, -εως (m.)—high priest
 ἀρχη, -ης (f.)—beginning, rule
 ἀρχομαι—I begin
 ἀρχων, -οντος (m.)—ruler
 ἀσθενης—weak
 ἀσπάζομαι—I greet
 ἀστηρ, -ερος (m.)—star
 αὐτη—this (fem.)
 αὐτος—he
 ἀφεσις, -εως (f.)—forgiveness

ἀφιημι—I forgive
ἀφρων—foolish

βαινω—I go
βαλλω—I throw
βαπτισμα, -ατος (n.)—baptism
βαπτιστης, -ου (m.)—Baptist
βαπτω—I dip
βασιλεια, -ας (f.)—kingdom
βασιλευς, -εως (m.)—king
βιβλιον, -ου (n.)—book
βιος, -ου (m.)—life
βλαπτω—I injure
βλεπω—I see
βοαω—I call out
βοηθεω—I help
βουλη, -ης (f.)—counsel, plan
βουλομαι—I wish
βους, βοος (m.)—ox
βροτος, -ου (m.)—mortal man
βρωμα, -ατος (n.)—food

γαρ—for, because
γενεα, -ας (f.)—generation
γενναομαι—I am born
γενος, -ους (n.)—race, nation
γη, γης (f.)—earth, land
γινομαι—I become
γινωσκω—I know
γλωσσα, -ης (f.)—tongue
γναθος, -ου (f.)—jaw
γνωσις, -εως (f.)—knowledge
γονευσ, -εως (m.)—parent
γραμμα, -ατος (n.)—letter (of
alphabet)
γραμματευς, -εως (m.)—scribe
γραφη, -ης (f.)—writing (pl.—
the Scriptures)
γραφω—I write
γρηγορεω—I keep awake
γυνη, γυναικος (f.)—woman, wife

δαιμονιον, -ου (n.)—demon
δε—but
δει—it is necessary
δεισιδαιμων—religious

δεκα—ten
δεκατος—tenth
δενδρον, -ου (n.)—tree
δεξιος—right (hand)
δεομαι—I pray, beseech
δεσποτης, -ου (m.)—master
δευτερος—second
δεχομαι—I receive
δηλον—clear
δημος, -ου (m.)—people
διαβαινω—I cross over
διαβολος, -ου (m.)—devil
διαθηκη, -ης (f.)—covenant, testa-
ment
διαλεγομαι—I discuss
διατριβω—I spend (time)
διαφερομαι—I differ
διδασκαλος, -ου (m.)—teacher
διδασκω—I teach
διδωμι—I give
δικαιος—just, righteous
δικαιοσυνη, -ης (f.)—righteous-
ness

δικαιοω—I justify
δικτυον, -ου (n.)—net
διωκω—I pursue
δοξα, -ης (f.)—glory, opinion
δουλος, -ου (m.)—slave, servant
δυναμαι—I am able, I can
δυναμις, -εως (f.)—power
δυνατος—able, possible
δυο—two
δυσεντερια—dysentery
δωδεκα—twelve
δωρεαν—freely
δωρον, -ου (n.)—gift

εαω—I allow
εβδομος—seventh
εγγιζω—I draw near
εγγυς—near
εγειρω—I rouse
εγω—I
εθνος, -ους (n.)—tribe, nation
ει—if
ειδωλον, -ου (n.)—idol, image

εἴκοσι—twenty
 εἰκων, -ονος (f.)—image, picture
 εἰρήνη, -ης (f.)—peace
 εἰς—into
 εἰσαγω—I lead into
 ἐκ, ἐξ—out of
 ἕκαστος—each
 ἐκκλησια, -ας (f.)—assembly,
 church
 ἐκκλινω—I bend
 ἕκτος—sixth
 ἐλεεω—I have mercy on
 ἐλευθερια, -ας (f.)—freedom
 ἐλευθερος—free
 ἐλπις, -ιδος (f.)—hope
 ἐμβαινω—I enter
 ἐν—in, on
 ἐνατος—ninth
 ἐνδυνω—I put on
 ἐνθαδε—here
 ἐντολη, -ης (f.)—commandment
 ἐνωπιον—in front of, before
 ἐξ—six
 ἐξουσια, -ας (f.)—authority
 ἐπαγγελια, -ας (f.)—promise
 ἐπαρχια, -ας (f.)—province
 ἐπι—on
 ἐπιθυμια, -ας (f.)—desire
 ἐπικαλεω—I name
 ἐπιστολη, -ης (f.)—letter, epistle
 ἐργαζομαι—I work
 ἐργατης, -ου (m.)—workman
 ἔργον, -ου (n.)—work
 ἐρημος, -ου (f.)—desert
 ἐρις, -ιδος (f.)—strife
 ἐρχομαι—I come, go
 ἐρωταω—I ask (question)
 ἐσθιω—I eat
 ἐστι—it is
 ἐσχατος—last
 ἕτερος—other
 ἔτος, -ους (n.)—year
 εὖ—well
 εὐαγγελιζομαι—I preach the gos-
 pel
 εὐαγγελιον, -ου (n.)—gospel

εὐαγγελιστης, -ου (m.)—preacher,
 evangelist
 εὐθυς—immediately
 εὕρισκω—I find
 εὐσεβειω—I reverence
 εὕτυχεω—I prosper
 ἐχθρος, -ου (m.)—enemy
 ἔχω—I have
 ζηλωτης, -ου (m.)—jealous per-
 son
 ζητεω—I seek
 ζωη, -ης (f.)—life
 ζωνη, -ης (f.)—belt
 ζων, -ου (n.)—animal
 ἡγεμονευω—I govern
 ἡγεμων, -ονος (m.)—leader, gover-
 nor
 ἦθος, -ους (n.)—manners, cus-
 tom
 ἡμεῖς—we
 ἡμερα, -ας (f.)—day
 ἡμισυ—half
 Ἡρωδης, -ου (m.)—Herod
 ἦχος, -ους (n.)—sound
 θαλασσα, -ης (f.)—sea
 θανατος, -ου (m.)—death
 θαυμαστος—wonderful
 θελημα, -ατος (n.)—will
 θελω—I wish, will
 θεος, -ου (m.)—god
 θεραπευω—I care for
 θερμος—warm
 θεωρεω—I look at, see
 θνητος—mortal
 θριξ, τριχος (f.)—hair
 θρονος, -ου (m.)—throne
 θυγατηρ, -τρος (f.)—daughter
 θυρα, -ας (f.)—door
 θυσια, -ας (f.)—sacrifice
 ἰαομαι—I cure
 ἰατρος, -ου (m.)—doctor
 ἰδιος—own

ἱερεὺς, -εως (m.)—priest
ἱερόν, -ον (n.)—temple
ἱερός—sacred
Ἰησοῦς, -ου (m.)—Jesus
ἱμάτιον, -ον (n.)—garment
Ἰορδάνης, -ου (m.)—Jordan
ἵστημι—I make to stand
ἰσχυρός—strong
ἰσχυῶ—I am strong, am able
ἰχθύς, -υός (m.)—fish
Ἰωάννης, -ου (m.)—John
καθαρός—pure
καθέδρα, -ας (f.)—seat, chair
καθίζω—I sit
καί—and
καινός—new, fresh
καίπερ—although
καιρός, -ου (m.)—time, opportunity
κακός—bad
καλέω—I call
καλός—good, beautiful
καλῶς—well, beautifully
καρδιά, -ας (f.)—heart
καρπός, -ου (m.)—fruit
κατὰ—according to
καταβαίνω—I descend
κατακρίνω—I condemn
καταλείπω—I leave, desert
καταλύω—I destroy
καταπίνω—I drink up
καταργέω—I cancel
καταρτιζέω—I mend
καταστροφή, -ης (f.)—catastrophe
κατώ—below, downward
κελεύω—I command
κερδός, -ους (n.)—gain
κεφαλή, -ης (f.)—head
κηρύσσω—I preach
κινέω—I move
κλεπτής, -ου (m.)—thief
κλεπτῶ—I steal
κλίνη, -ης (f.)—bed
κοιμάομαι—I go to sleep
κοινοῶ—I defile

κορη, -ης (f.)—girl
κόσμος, -ου (m.)—world
κραῶ—I cry out
κρατέω—I seize, arrest
κρατός, -ους (n.)—strength
κρέας, -ατος (n.)—meat
κρίμα, -ατος (n.)—judgement, verdict
κρίνω—I judge
κρίσις, -εως (f.)—judgement
κριτής, -ου (m.)—judge
κροκοδείλος, -ου (m.)—crocodile
κρυπτός—hidden, secret
κρυπτόω—I hide
κύκλος, -ου (m.)—circle
κύριος, -ου (m.)—lord
κύων, κυνός (m.)—dog
κωμῆ, -ης (f.)—village
λάλεω—I speak, say
λαμβάνω—I take, receive
λάμπας, -αδος (f.)—lamp
λάμπω—I shine
λαός, -ου (m.)—people
λατρεύω—I serve, worship
λέγω—I say
λευκός—white
λέων, -οντος (m.)—lion
ληστής, -ου (m.)—robber
λόγος, -ου (m.)—word
λουώ—I wash
λύπη, -ης (f.)—grief
λύω—I loosen
μαθητής, -ου (m.)—student, disciple
μακάριος—happy, blessed
μακρός—long
μανθάνω—I learn
μαρτυρέω—I witness
ματαιός—vain
ματην—vainly
μαχομαι—I fight
μεγας—great, big
μένω—I remain

μεσος—middle
μετα—after, with
μετανοεω—I repent
μετρον, -ου (n.)—measure
μηδεις—no one
μην, μηνος (m.)—month
μητηρ, μητρος (f.)—mother
μικρος—small, little
μισθος, -ου (m.)—reward
μοιχευω—I commit adultery
μονον—only
μονος—alone
μυστηριον, -ου (n.)—mystery
μωραινω—I spoil
μωρος—foolish

νεανιας, -ου (m.)—young man
νεκρος—dead
νεος—new, young
νεφελη, -ης (f.)—cloud
νηπιος, -ου (m.)—infant
νοημα, -ατος (n.)—thought
νομιζω—I think
νομος, -ου (m.)—law
νοσημα, -ατος (n.)—disease
νυν—now
νυξ, νυκτος (f.)—night

ογδοος—eighth
οδος, -ου (f.)—way, road
οδους, -οντος (m.)—tooth
οιδα—I know
οικεω—I dwell
οικοδεσποτης, -ου (m.)—householder
οικος, -ου (m.)—house
ολιγος—little, few
ολοκαυτωμα, -ατος (n.)—burnt offering
ομιλια, -ας (f.)—relationship, association
ομοιος—like
ομολογεω—I confess
ονομα, -ατος (n.)—name
οπου—where
οπως—how

οραμα, -ατος (n.)—vision
οραω—I see
οργη, -ης (f.)—anger
οργιζομαι—I am angry
ορθος—straight, right
ορος, -ους (n.)—mountain
ος—who
οτε—when
οτι—that, because
ου—not
ουδεις—no one
ουρανος, -ου (m.)—heaven
ους, ωτος (n.)—ear
ουτος—this (mas.)
ουτως—thus
οχλος, -ου (m.)—crowd
οφειλω—I owe
οφθαλμος, -ου (m.)—eye

παθημα, -ατος (n.)—suffering
παθος, -ους (n.)—suffering
παιδιον, -ου (n.)—child
παιδισκη, -ης (f.)—maidservant
παις, παιδος (m.)—boy, servant
παλαιος—ancient
πανδοχειον, -ου (n.)—inn
πανδοχευς, -εως (m.)—innkeeper
πανοπλιον, -ου (n.)—armour
παρα—alongside
παραβολη, -ης (f.)—parable
παραγγελια, -ας (f.)—commandment
παραδεισος, -ου (m.)—garden
παραπτωμα, -ατος (n.)—fault
παρθενος, -ου (f.)—girl, maiden
παροικειω—I live with, dwell
πας—every, all
πασχω—I suffer
πατηρ, πατρος (m.)—father
παυω—I stop
πειθω—I persuade
πειρασμος, -ου (m.)—trial, temptation
πεμπτος—fifth
πεμπω—I send
πεντε—five

πεντηκοστος—fiftieth
 περι—about, around
 περιπατεω—I walk about
 περισσευω—I abound
 περισσον—abundantly
 πηρα, -ας (f)—bag
 πινω—I drink
 πιπτω—I fall
 πιστευω—I believe
 πιστις, -εως (f)—faith
 πιστος—faithful
 πλαναω—I deceive
 πλανη, -ης (f.)—error
 πληθος, -ους (n)—crowd
 πληρης—full
 πληρωω—I fill
 πλησιον—near
 (ὁ πλησιον—neighbour)
 πλοιον, -ου (n)—ship, boat
 πνευμα, -ατος (n.)—wind, spirit
 ποιωω—I do, make
 ποιμην, -ενος (m)—shepherd
 ποιως—of what kind?
 πολις, -εως (f)—city
 πολιτης, -ου (m)—citizen
 πολυς—much (pl many)
 πονηρος—wicked
 πορευομαι—I go, journey
 ποταμος, -ου (m.)—river
 πους, ποδος (m)—foot
 πρασσω—I do, practise
 πρεσβυτερος, -ου (m.)—elder
 προβατον, -ου (n)—sheep
 προς—to
 προσευχομαι—I pray
 προσηλυτης, -ου (m.)—stranger,
 proselyte
 προσκυνωω—I worship
 προσωπον, -ου (n.)—face
 προφητης, -ου (m.)—prophet
 πρωι—early in the morning
 πρωτος—first
 πτωχος—poor
 πυρ, πυρος (n)—fire
 πως—how

ρημα, -ατος (n)—word
 σabbaton, -ου (n.)—Sabbath
 σιπιγξ, -ιγγος (f.)—trumpet
 σαρξ, σαρκος (f)—flesh
 σημειον, -ου (n.)—sign, miracle
 σιγαω } —{ I become silent
 σιωπω } —{ I remain silent
 σκια, -ας (f.)—shadow
 σκηνη, -ης (f.)—tent
 σκοτος, -ους (n.)—darkness
 σοφια, -ας (f)—wisdom
 σοφος—wise
 σπειρω—I sow
 σπερμα, -ατος (n)—seed
 σταυρωω—I crucify
 σταχυς, -υος (m.)—ear (of corn)
 στομα, -ατος (n)—mouth
 στρατιωτης, -ου (m)—soldier
 στρεφω—I turn
 συ—you (sing)
 συγγενης—akin, kinsman
 συναγωγη, -ης (f)—synagogue
 συνερχομαι—I come together
 συνιημι—I understand
 σχισμα, -ατος (n)—division
 σχολη, -ης (f)—leisure, school
 σωζω—I save
 σωμα, -ατος (n.)—body
 σωτηρ, -ηρος (m)—saviour
 σωτηρια, -ας (f.)—salvation
 ταλαντον, -ου (n.)—talent
 ταπεινωω—I humble
 ταχεως, ταχυ—quickly
 τεκνον, -ου (n)—child
 τελωω—I complete
 τελος, -ους (n.)—end
 τελωνης, -ου (m)—tax-collector
 τερας, -ατος (n)—wonder,
 miracle
 τεταρτος—fourth
 τεχνη, -ης (f)—art, skill
 τηρεω—I watch, keep
 τι,—what?
 τιθημι—I place

τικτω—I bring forth (child)
τιμαω—I honour
τιμωρω—I punish
τις;—who?
τις—someone, anyone
τοπος, -ου (m.)—place
τοτε—then
τουτο—this (neut.)
τραπεζα, -ης (f.)—table
τριτος—third
τυπτω—I strike
τυραννις, -ιδος (f.)—absolute rule,
tyranny
τυραννος, -ου (m.)—absolute
ruler, tyrant

υδωρ, υδατος (n.)—water
υιος, -ου (m.)—son
υμεις—you (pl.)
υμνος, -ου (m.)—hymn
υπαγω—I return
υπακουω—I obey
υπαρχει—it exists, it is
υπηρετης, -ου (m.)—attendant,
officer
υπο—under, by
υποζυγιον, -ου (n.)—yoke-animal
υποκριτης, -ου (m.)—play-actor,
hypocrite
υπολαμβάνω—I think, conjec-
ture
υς, υος (m.)—pig
υψωω—I lift up, exalt

φανερως—clear, manifest
φανερωω—I make clear
φερω—I carry
φευγω—I flee
φημι—I say
φθειρω—I destroy
φιλεω—I love
φιλος, -ου (m.)—friend
φλοξ, φλογος (f.)—flame

φοβειω—I terrify
(φοβεομαι—I fear)
φοβος, -ου (m.)—fear
φονευω—I murder
φονος, -ου (m.)—murder
φροντις, -ιδος (f.)—thought,
anxiety
φυλακη, -ης (f.)—prison
φυλαξ, -ακος (m.)—guard
φυλασσω—I guard
φυλλον, -ου (n.)—leaf
φωνειω—I call
φωνη, -ης (f.)—voice, sound
φως, φωτος (n.)—light

χαιρω—I rejoice
χαρα, -ας (f.)—joy
χαρακτηρ, -ηρος (m.)—character,
letter (of alphabet)
χαρις, -ιτος (f.)—grace
χειμων, -ωνος (m.)—winter
χειρ, χειρος (f.)—hand
χιτων, -ωνος (m.)—shirt, tunic
χλωρος—green
χηρημα, -ατος (n.)—thing, posses-
sion (pl. money)
χηρησμος, -ου (m.)—oracle
χηριστος—kind, good
χρονος, -ου (m.)—time
χρυσος, -ου (m.)—gold
χωρα, -ας (f.)—country

ψευδης—false
ψευδομαρτυρεω—give false wit-
ness
ψευδος, -ους (n.)—lie
ψευστης, -ου (m.)—liar
ψυχη, -ης (f.)—soul, life

ωδε—here
ωρα, -ας (f.)—hour
ως—as
ωσπερ—as
ωστε—so that

ENGLISH—GREEK VOCABULARY

(Genders of nouns are given in the Greek-English vocabulary only)

- able (adj.)—*δυνατος*
 able, I am—*δυναμαι*
 abound—*περισσευω*
 about—*περι*
 abundantly—*περισσον*
 according to—*κατα*
 account—*λογος*
 (give account—*λογον δουναι*)
 age—*αιων*
 air—*αιθηρ*
 akin—*συγγενης*
 all—*πας*
 allow—*εαω*
 alone—*μονος*
 alongside—*παρα*
 although—*καιπερ*
 always—*αι*
 ancient—*παλαιος*
 and—*και*
 anger—*οργη*
 angry, I am—*οργιζομαι*
 animal—*ζωον*
 announce—*αγγελω*
 answer—*αποκρινομαι*
 apostle—*αποστολος*
 armour—*πανοπλιον*
 art—*τεχνη*
 as—*ως*
 ask (question)—*ερωταω*
 assembly—*εκκλησια*
 attendant—*υπηρετης*
 authority—*εξουσια*
- bad—*κακος*
 bag—*πηρα*
 baptism—*βαπτισμα*
 Baptist—*βαπτιστης*
 bark—*φωνεω*
 beautiful—*καλος*
 because—*οτι, γαρ*
- become—*γινομαι*
 bed—*κλινη*
 before (place)—*ενωπιον*
 begin—*αρχομαι*
 beginning—*αρχη*
 believe—*πιστευω*
 beloved—*αγαπητος*
 below—*κατω*
 belt—*ζωνη*
 bend—*κλινω, εκκλινω*
 beseech—*δεομαι*
 best—*αριστος*
 big—*μεγας*
 blessed—*μακαριος*
 blood—*αιμα*
 boat—*πλοιον*
 body—*σωμα*
 book—*βιβλιον*
 born, I am—*γενναομαι*
 both—*αμφοτεροι*
 boy—*παις*
 bread—*αρτος*
 bring—*φερω*
 (bring back—*αναφερω*)
 bring forth (child)—*τικτω*
 brother—*αδελφος*
 but—*αλλα, δε*
 by—*υπο*
- call—*καλεω*
 call (by name)—*επικαλεω*
 call out—*φωνεω*
 can—*δυναμαι*
 cancel—*καταργεω*
 care for—*θεραπευω*
 careful—*ακριβης*
 carry—*φερω*
 cast (net)—*αμφιβαλλω*
 catastrophe—*καταστροφη*
 cause—*αιτια*

cease—*πανομαι*
chair—*καθεδρα*
child—*παιδιον, τεκνον*
circle—*κυκλος*
citizen—*πολιτης*
city—*πολις*
clear—*φανερως*
cloud—*νεφελη*
come—*ερχομαι*
come together—*συνερχομαι*
command—*κελευω, παραγγελλω*
commandment—*εντολη,*
παραγγελια

complete—*τελεω*
condemn—*κατακρινω*
confess—*ομολογεω*
conjecture—*υπολαμβάνω*
contest—*αγων*
counsel—*βουλη*
country—*χωρα*
crocodile—*κροκοδειλος*
cross over—*διαβαινω*
crowd—*οχλος, πληθος*
crucify—*σταυρωω*
cry out—*κραζω, βοαω*
custom—*ηθος*

darkness—*σκοτος*
daughter—*θυγατηρ*
day—*ημερα*
dead—*νεκρος*
death—*θανατος*
deceive—*πλαναω*
defile—*κοινωω*
demon—*δαιμονιον*
desert (n.)—*ερημος*
desert (vb.)—*καταλειπω*
desire—*επιθυμωω*
destroy—*καταλυω*
destruction—*απωλεια*
devil—*διαβολος*
die—*αποθνησκω*
differ—*διαφερομαι*
dip—*βαπτωω*
disciple—*μαθητης*
discuss—*διαλεγομαι*

disease—*νοσημα*
division—*σχισμα*
do—*ποιωω, πρρασσω*
doctor—*ιατρος*
dog—*κυων*
door—*θυρα*
draw near—*εγγιζωω*
drink—*πινωω*
drink up—*καταπινωω*
dwell—*παροικωω, οικωω*
dysentery—*δυσεντερια*

each—*εκαστος*
ear—*ους*
ear (of corn)—*σταχυς*
early—*πρωι*
earth—*γη*
eat—*εσθιωω*
eighth—*ογδοος*
elder—*πρεσβυτερος*
elsewhere—*αλλαχου*
end—*τελος*
enemy—*εχθρος*
enter—*εμβαινωω*
error—*πλανη*
eternal—*αιωνιος*
evangelist—*ευαγγελιστης*
every—*πας*
exists—*υπαρχει*
eye—*οφθαλμος*

face—*προσωπον*
faithful—*πιστος*
fall—*πιπτωω*
false—*ψευδης*
father—*πατηρ*
fault—*παραπτωμα*
fear (n.)—*φοβος*
fear (vb.)—*φοβεομαι*
field—*αγρος*
fifth—*πεμπτος*
fiftieth—*πεντηκοστος*
fight—*μαχομαι*
fill—*πληρωωω*
find—*ευρισκωω*
fire—*πυρ*

first—πρωτος
 fish—ιχθυς
 five—πεντε
 flame—φλοξ
 flee—φευγω
 flesh—σαρξ, κρεας
 food—βρωμα
 foolish—αφρων, μωρος
 foot—πους
 for (because)—γαρ
 forgive—αφημι
 forgiveness—αφεσις
 fourth—τεταρτος
 free—ελευθερος
 freedom—ελευθερια
 freely—δωρεαν
 friend—φιλος
 from—απο
 fruit—καρπος
 full—πληρης

 gain—κερδος
 game—αγων
 garden—παραδεισος
 garment—ιματιον
 generation—γενεα
 Gentiles—εθνη
 gift—δωρον
 girl—κορη, παρθενος
 give—διδωμι
 glory—δοξα
 go—βαινω, ερχομαι, πορευομαι
 god—θεος
 gold—χρυσος
 good—αγαθος, καλος
 gospel—ευαγγελιον
 govern—ηγεμονευω
 governor—ηγεμων
 grace—χαρις
 great—μεγας
 green—χλωρος
 greet—ασπαζομαι
 grief—λυπη
 guard (n.)—φυλαξ
 guard (vb.)—φυλασσω

hair—θριξ
 half—ημισυ
 hand—χειρ
 happy—μακαριος
 have—εχω
 he—αυτος
 head—κεφαλη
 heal—ιαομαι
 hear—ακουω
 heart—καρδια
 heaven—ουρανος
 help—βοηθεω
 here—ενθαδε, ωδε
 Herod—Ηρωδης
 hidden—κρυπτος
 hide—κρυπτω
 high priest—αρχιερευς
 hold—κρατεω
 holy—αγιος
 honour—τιμαω
 hope—ελπις
 hour—ωρα
 house—οικος
 householder—οικοδεσποτης
 how—οπως
 human—ανθρωπινος
 humble—ταπεινω
 hypocrite—υποκριτης

I—εγω
 idol—ειδωλον
 if—ει
 image—εικων, ειδωλον
 immediately—ευθυς
 immortal—αθανατος
 impossible—αδυνατος
 in—εν
 infant—νηπιος
 injure—βλαπτω, αδικεω
 inn—πανδοχειον
 innkeeper—πανδοχευς
 innocent—αθωρος
 into—εις
 is—εστι
 it—αυτο

jaw—γναθος
jealous—ζηλωτης
Jesus—Ἰησους
John—Ἰωαννης
Jordan—Ἰορδανης
judge (n.)—κριτης
judge (vb.)—κρινω
judgement—κριμα, κρισις
jump up—ἀναπηδαω
just—δικαιος
justify—δικαιωω

kill—ἀποκτεινω
kind—χρηστος
king—βασιλευς
kingdom—βασιλεια
kinsman—συγγενης
know—γινωσκω
knowledge—γνωσις

lamb—ἀμνος
lamp—λαμπας
large—μακρος
last—ἐσχατος
law—νομος
lazy—ἀργος
lead—ἀγω
leader—ἡγεμων
leaf—φυλλον
learn—μανθανω
leave—λειπω, καταλειπω
left (hand)—ἀριστερος
leisure—σχολη
letter (of alphabet)—γραμμα
letter (epistle)—ἐπιστολη
liar—ψευστης
lie—ψευδος
life—ζωη, βιος
lift—αἶρω
lift up—ὑψωω
light—φως
like—δμοιος
lion—λεων
little—μικρος
live—ζαω
live with—παροικεω

long—μακρος
look at—βλεπω, θεωρεω
loosen—λυω
lord—κυριος
love (n.)—ἀγαπη
love (vb.)—ἀγαπαω, φιλεω

maiden—παρθενος
maidservant—παιδισκη
man—ἄνθρωπος, ἄνηρ
manifest—φανερως
manners—ἦθος
many—πολλοι
master—δεσποτης
measure—μετρον
meat—κρεας
mend—καταρτιζω
mercy—ἐλεος
messenger—ἄγγελος
middle—μεσος
miracle—σημειον, τερας
money—ἀργυριον, χρηματα
month—μην
mortal—θνητος
mother—μητηρ
mountain—ὄρος
mouth—στομα
move—κινεω
much—πολυς
murder (n.)—φονος
murder (vb.)—φονεωω
must—(use δει)
mystery—μυστηριον

name (n.)—ὄνομα
name (vb.)—ἐπικαλεω
nation—γενος, ἔθνος
near—ἐγγυς
necessary, it is—δει
necessity—ἀναγκη
net—δικτυον
new—καινος, νεος
night—νυξ
ninth—ἐνατος
nobody—οὐδεις, μηδεις
not—οὐ, μη

obey—ὕπακουω
officer—ὑπηρέτης
old—παλαιός
on—ἐν, ἐπι
one another—ἀλλήλους
only—μόνον
open—ἀνοίγω
opinion—δόξα
oracle—χρησμός
other—ἄλλος, ἕτερος
out of—ἐκ, ἐξ
owe—ὀφείλω
own—ἴδιος
ox—βους

parable—παραβολή
parent—γονεὺς
peace—εἰρήνη
people—λαός, δῆμος
persuade—πειθω
pig—ὑς
place (n.)—τόπος
place (vb.)—τιθῆμι
plan—βουλή
play-actor—ὑποκριτής
poor—πτωχός
possible—δυνατός
power—δυναμὶς
practise—πρασσω
pray—δεομαι, προσευχομαι
preach—κηρυσσω
preach gospel—εὐαγγελίζομαι
priest—ἱερεὺς
prison—φυλακή
promise—ἐπαγγελία
prophet—προφήτης
proselyte—προσηλύτης
prosper—εὐτυχεῖω
province—ἐπαρχία
punish—τιμωρεῖω
pure—καθαρός
pursue—διώκω
put on—ἐνδύω

quickly—ταχέως, ταχὺ

race, nation—γενός
read—ἀναγινωσκω
receive—λαμβάνω, δεχομαι
rejoice—χαίρω, ἀγαλλιαομαι
relationship—ὀμιλία
religious—διδασκαλικῶν
remain—μένω
repent—μετανοεῶ
report—ἀναγγελλω
resurrection—ἀναστασις
return—ὑπαγω
reverence—εὐσεβέω
reward—μισθός
right (hand)—δεξιός
righteous—δικαίος
righteousness—δικαιοσύνη
river—ποταμός
road—ὁδός
robber—ληστής
rouse—ἐγείρω
rule—ἀρχή

sabbath—σαββατόν
sacred—ἱερός
sacrifice—θύσια
salt (n.)—ἅλας
salt (vb.)—ἅλιζω
salvation—σωτηρία
save—σωζω
saviour—σωτήρ
say—λέγω, φημι
school—σχολή
scribe—γραμματεὺς
scriptures—γραφαί
sea—θάλασσα
seat—καθέδρα
second—δευτερός
see—βλέπω, θεωρεῶ, ὄρω
seed—σπέρμα
seek—ζητεῶ
seize—ἄρπαζω, κρατεῶ
self—αὐτός
sell—ἀποδίδομαι
send—πέμπω, ἀποστελλω
servant—δούλος
serve—λατρεῖω

seventh—*ἑβδομος*
shadow—*σκια*
she—*αὐτή*
sheep—*προβατον*
shepherd—*ποιμνη*
shine—*λαμπω*
shirt—*χιτων*
short—*μικρος*
sign—*σημειον*
silent, be—*σιωπαω, σιγαω*
silver—*αργυριον*
sin (n.)—*αμαρτια*
sin (vb)—*αμαρτανω*
sinner—*αμαρτωλος*
sit—*καθιζω*
six—*ἕξ*
skill—*τεχνη*
slave—*δουλος*
sleep, go to—*κοιμασμαι*
smack—*τυπτω*
small—*μικρος*
snatch—*αρπαζω*
so, thus—*οὕτως*
so that—*ὥστε*
soldier—*στρατιωτης*
someone—*τις*
son—*υἱος*
soul—*ψυχη*
sound—*φωνη, ἦχος*
sow—*σπειρω*
speak—*λαλεω, λεγω*
spend (time)—*διατριβω*
spirit—*πνευμα*
spoil—*μωραινω*
stand—*ιστημι*
star—*αστηρη*
steal—*κλεπτω*
stop—*παυω (tr.),*
πανομαι (intr)
stranger—*προσηλυτης*
strife—*ἔρις*
strike—*τυπτω*
strong—*ισχυρος*
strong, I am—*ισχυω*
student—*μαθητης*
suffer—*πασχω*

suffering—*παθημα, παθος*
synagogue—*συναγωγη*
table—*τραπεζα*
take—*λαμβάνω*
talent—*ταλαντον*
tax-collector—*τελωνης*
teach—*διδασκω*
teacher—*διδασκαλος*
temple—*ἱερον*
temptation—*πειρασμος*
ten—*δεκα*
tent—*σκηνη*
tenth—*δεκατος*
terrify—*φοβω*
testament—*διαθηκη*
that (conj.)—*ὅτι*
then—*τοτε*
they—*αὐτοι*
thief—*κλεπτης*
thing—*χρημα*
think—*νομιζω, ὑπολαμβάνω*
third—*τριτος*
thought—*νοημα*
throw—*βαλλω*
thus—*οὕτως*
time—*καιρος, χρονος*
to—*προς*
tongue—*γλωσσα*
tooth—*ὀδους*
touch—*ἅπτομαι*
tree—*δενδρον*
trial—*πειρασμος*
tribe—*εθνος*
true—*ἀληθης*
trumpet—*σαλπιγξ*
truth—*ἀληθεια*
tunic—*χιτων*
turn—*στρεφω*
turn away—*ἀποστρεφω*
turn out—*ἐκβαλλω*
twelve—*δωδεκα*
twenty—*εἰκοσι*
two—*δυο*
tyranny—*τυραννις*

under—ὑπο
understand—συνιημι
unskilled—ἀπειρος

vain—ματαιος
vainly—ματην
village—κωμη
vineyard—ἀμπελων
vision—δραμα
voice—φωνη

wake (keep awake)—γρηγορευω
walk—περιπατεω
warm—θερμος
wash—λουω
watch—τηρευω, φυλασσω
water—ὑδωρ
way—δδος
we—ἡμεις
weak—ἀσθενης
well—καλως, εὖ
when—ότε
where—όπου
white—λευκος
who—ός

who?—τις ;
wicked—πονηρος
wife—γυνη
will—βελημα
wind—ἀνεμος, πνευμα
winter—χειμων
wisdom—σοφια
wise—σοφος
wish—θελω, βουλομαι
with—μετα, συν
witness—μαρτυρευω
woman—γυνη
wonderful—θαυμαστος
word—λογος, ῥημα
work (n.)—εργον
work (vb.)—εργαζομαι
workman—εργατης
world—κοσμος
worthy—ἀξιος
write—γραφω
writing—γραφη

year—ετος
you—συ (sing.), ὑμεις (pl.)
young man—νεανιας